Chemistry, Manufacturing, and Control (CMC) Information for Human Gene Therapy Investigational New Drug Applications (INDs)

Draft Guidance for Industry

This guidance document is for comment purposes only.

Submit one set of either electronic or written comments on this draft guidance by the date provided in the Federal Register notice announcing the availability of the draft guidance. Submit electronic comments to https://www.regulations.gov. Submit written comments to the Dockets Management Staff (HFA-305), Food and Drug Administration, 5630 Fishers Lane, Rm. 1061, Rockville, MD 20852. You should identify all comments with the docket number listed in the notice of availability that publishes in the Federal Register. Additional copies of this guidance are available from the Office of Communication, Outreach and Development (OCOD), 10903 New Hampshire Ave., Bldg. 71, Rm. 3128, Silver Spring, MD 20993-0002, or by calling 1-800-835-4709 or 240-402-8010, or email ocod@fda.hhs.gov, or from the Internet at https://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guid ances/default.htm. For questions on the content of this guidance, contact OCOD at the phone numbers or email address listed above. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services **Food and Drug Administration Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research July 2018**

Draft – Not for Implementation

Table of Contents

I.	INTR	ODUCTION	1		
II.	BACKGROUND 2				
III.	ADM	ADMINISTRATIVE INFORMATION (MODULE 1 OF THE CTD)			
	A. B. C. D.	Administrative Documents Labels Environmental Analysis Previously Submitted Information	3 3 4 4		
IV.	SUM	SUMMARY OF QUALITY INFORMATION (MODULE 2 OF THE CTD)			
	A. B. C. D.	General Information Drug Substance and Drug Product Combination Products Product Handling at the Clinical Site	5 5 6 6		
V.	MAN OF T	UFACTURING PROCESS AND CONTROL INFORMATION (MODUL HE CTD)	ÆЗ		
	A	Drug Substance (3.2.8)			
	1. 2.	General Information (3.2.S.1) Drug Substance Manufacture (3.2.S.2)	7 9		
	3. 4.	Control of Drug Substance (3.2.S.4)	26		
	5. 6. 7	Reference Standards or Materials (3.2.S.5) Container Closure System (3.2.S.6) Stability (3.2.S.7)	35		
	и. В.	Drug Product (3.2.P)	35		
	1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. C. 1.	Drug Product Description and Composition (3.2.P.1) Pharmaceutical Development (3.2.P.2) Manufacture (3.2.P.3) Control of Excipients (3.2.P.4) Control of Drug Product (3.2.P.5) Reference Standards or Materials (3.2.P.6) Container Closure System (3.2.P.7) Stability (3.2.P.8) Appendices (3.2.A) Facilities and Equipment (3.2.A.1) Adventitious A gents Sofety Evaluation (3.2.A.2)	36 37 40 41 42 47 47 48 48 48		
VI.	Z. REFF	RENCES	50		

Draft – Not for Implementation

Chemistry, Manufacturing, and Control (CMC) Information for Human Gene Therapy Investigational New Drug Applications (INDs)

Draft Guidance for Industry

This draft guidance, when finalized, will represent the current thinking of the Food and Drug Administration (FDA or Agency) on this topic. It does not establish any rights for any person and is not binding on FDA or the public. You can use an alternative approach if it satisfies the requirements of the applicable statutes and regulations. To discuss an alternative approach, contact the FDA staff responsible for this guidance as listed on the title page.

14 15

17

1

2

3 4 5

10

11

12

13

16 I. INTRODUCTION

Human gene therapy seeks to modify or manipulate the expression of a gene or to alter the biological properties of living cells for therapeutic use. We, the FDA, are providing you,

20 sponsors of a human gene therapy Investigational New Drug Application (IND).

21 recommendations regarding chemistry, manufacturing, and control (CMC) information to be

submitted in an IND. The purpose of this draft guidance is to inform sponsors how to provide

23 sufficient CMC information required to assure product safety, identity, quality, purity, and

24 strength (including potency) of the investigational product (21 CFR 312.23(a)(7)(i)). This

25 guidance applies to human gene therapy products and to combination products¹ that contain a

26 human gene therapy in combination with a drug or device.

27

28 This draft guidance, when finalized, will supersede the document entitled "Guidance for FDA

29 Reviewers and Sponsors: Content and Review of Chemistry, Manufacturing, and Control

30 (CMC) Information for Human Gene Therapy Investigational New Drug Applications (INDs),"

31 dated April 2008 (April 2008 guidance) (Ref. 1). The field of gene therapy has progressed

32 rapidly since we issued the April 2008 guidance. Therefore, we are updating that guidance to

33 provide you with current FDA recommendations regarding the CMC content of a gene therapy

34 IND. This guidance is organized to follow the structure of the FDA guidance on the Common

35 Technical Document (CTD). Information on the CTD can be found in the "Guidance for

Industry: M4Q: The CTD – Quality," dated August 2001 (Ref. 2). For information on the
 submission of an electronic CTD (eCTD), please see the FDA website

38 <u>https://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DevelopmentApprovalProcess/FormsSubmissionRequirements/Elect</u>

39 ronicSubmissions/ucm153574.htm.

¹ Combination products are comprised of any combination of a drug and a device; a device and a biological product; a biological product and a drug; or a drug, a device, and a biological product; see 21 CFR 3.2(e) for the complete definition of combination product. Combination products are assigned to a lead center for review; see 21 CFR 3.4.

Draft – Not for Implementation

40

41 FDA's guidance documents, including this guidance, do not establish legally enforceable

42 responsibilities. Instead, guidance describes the FDA's current thinking on a topic and should be

43 viewed only as recommendations unless specific regulatory or statutory requirements are cited.

- 44 The use of the word *should* in FDA's guidance means that something is suggested or
- 45 recommended but not required.
- 46 47

48 II. BACKGROUND

49

50 Human gene therapy products are defined as all products that mediate their effects by

51 transcription or translation of transferred genetic material or by specifically altering host (human)

52 genetic sequences. Some examples of gene therapy products include nucleic acids, genetically

53 modified microorganisms (e.g., viruses, bacteria, fungi), engineered site-specific nucleases used

for human genome editing,² and ex vivo genetically modified human cells. Gene therapy

55 products meet the definition of "biological product" in section 351(i) of the Public Health

56 Service (PHS) Act (42 U.S.C. 262(i)) when such products are applicable to the prevention,

57 treatment, or cure of a disease or condition of human beings.

58

59 The FDA requires all sponsors of investigational new drug products (DPs), including

60 investigational gene therapy products, to describe the CMC information for the drug substance

61 (DS) (21 CFR 312.23(a)(7)(iv)(a)) and the DP (21 CFR 312.23(a)(7)(iv)(b)). FDA may place

62 the IND on clinical hold if the IND does not contain sufficient CMC information to assess the

63 risks to subjects in the proposed studies (21 CFR 312.42(b)(1)(iv)).

64

65 The CMC information submitted in an IND is a commitment to perform manufacturing and

66 testing of the investigational product, as stated. We acknowledge that manufacturing changes

67 may be necessary as product development proceeds, and you should submit information

- amendments to supplement the initial information submitted for the CMC processes (21 CFR
- 69 312.23(a)(7)(iii)). The CMC information submitted in the original IND for a Phase 1 study may
- be limited, and therefore, the effect of manufacturing changes, even minor changes, on product
- safety and quality may not be known. Thus, if a manufacturing change could affect product
- safety, identity, quality, purity, potency, or stability, you should submit the manufacturing
- change prior to implementation (21 CFR 312.23(a)(7)(iii)).
- 74

75 We recently published a guidance document, entitled "Providing Regulatory Submissions in

- 76 Electronic Format Certain Human Pharmaceutical Product Applications and Related
- 77 Submissions Using the eCTD Specifications; Guidance for Industry," dated April 2017,
- addressing the electronic submission of certain applications in the CTD format (eCTD) (Ref. 3).
- 79 Beginning May 5, 2017, all New Drug Applications (NDAs), Abbreviated New Drug
- 80 Applications (ANDAs), Biologics License Applications (BLAs), and Master Files must be
- submitted in eCTD, and commercial IND submissions must be submitted in eCTD, beginning

² Human Genome Editing: Science, Ethics, and Governance. The National Academies Press; 2017. <u>https://www.nap.edu/read/24623/chapter/1#xvii</u>

Draft – Not for Implementation

- 82 May 5, 2018 (Ref. 3). Excluded from the eCTD requirement are INDs for devices under section 83 351 of the PHS Act and products that are not intended to be distributed commercially. 84 Investigator-sponsored INDs and expanded access INDs (e.g., emergency use INDs and 85 treatment INDs) are also excluded from the eCTD requirement. In preparation for meeting these 86 requirements, we recommend that sponsors begin to organize and categorize their CMC 87 information, according to the CTD format. 88 89 You are not required to complete all CTD sections in your original IND submission. The 90 amount of CMC information to be submitted in your IND depends on the phase of investigation 91 (21 CFR 312.23(a)(7)(i)) and the scope of the clinical investigation proposed. The emphasis for 92 CMC review in all phases of development is product safety and manufacturing control. We 93 expect that sponsors may need to make modifications to previously submitted information as 94 clinical development proceeds and additional product knowledge and manufacturing experience 95 is collected. 96 97 We are providing detailed recommendations for submitting CMC information in Module 3 of 98 your IND. We have structured these recommendations to follow the outline of the FDA 99 "Guidance for Industry: M4Q: The CTD – Quality," dated August 2001 (Ref. 2). We are also 100 providing general recommendations regarding administrative and quality summary information 101 for Modules 1 and 2, respectively, of the CTD structure. 102 103 104 III. **ADMINISTRATIVE INFORMATION (MODULE 1 OF THE CTD)** 105 106 A. **Administrative Documents** 107 108 Administrative documents (e.g., application forms, such as Form FDA 1571, cover 109 letters, reviewer guides, and cross-reference authorization letters), claims of categorical 110 exclusion, and labeling information should be included in Module 1 of CTD submissions. 111 The cover letter of your submission should include a brief explanation of your 112 submission and its contents. When amendments are submitted to the IND for 113 manufacturing changes, your cover letter should clearly describe the purpose of the 114 amendment and highlight proposed changes. For amendments containing numerous or 115 significant changes, we recommend that you include a "Reviewer's Guide," as described 116 in FDA's "eCTD Technical Conformance Guide: Technical Specifications Document." 117 dated November 2017 (Ref. 4), and that you allow sufficient lead time (e.g., 30 days) for FDA review before release of a new lot of clinical trial material. 118 119 120 B. Labels 121 122 Your IND must contain a copy of all labels and labeling to be provided to each 123 investigator in the clinical study (21 CFR 312.23(a)(7)(iv)(d)). We recommend that you 124 include sample labels in Module 1 of the CTD. Please note that IND products must bear 125
 - a label with the statement, "Caution: New Drug--Limited by Federal (or United States) law to investigational use" (21 CFR 312.6). For products derived from autologous

126

Draft – Not for Implementation

donors and other situations described in 21 CFR 1271.90(a) for which a donor eligibility
determination is not required, you must include the required labeling in
21 CFR 1271.90(c), as applicable. For example, for cells intended for autologous use,
you must label the product "FOR AUTOLOGOUS USE ONLY" (21 CFR 1271.90(c)(1))
and "NOT EVALUATED FOR INFECTIOUS SUBSTANCES" if donor testing and
screening is not performed (21 CFR 1271.90(c)(2)).

134 C. Environmental Analysis

Your IND must contain either an environmental analysis or a claim for categorical exclusion (21 CFR 312.23(a)(7)(iv)(e)). Please note that, under ordinary circumstances, most INDs are eligible for categorical exclusion under 21 CFR 25.31(e) (Ref. 5). This information can be submitted in Module 1 of the CTD.

D. Previously Submitted Information

For INDs, you generally are not required to resubmit information that you have previously submitted to the Agency, and you may incorporate such information by reference. You may submit a written statement in your IND that appropriately identifies previously submitted information (21 CFR 312.23(b)). We recommend you describe the information that you are referencing and identify where that information is located in the previously submitted file.

149 150 You may also reference information previously submitted by another individual if proper 151 authorization has been granted. Proper authorization may be granted with a Letter of 152 Authorization (LOA) from the individual who submitted the information 153 (21 CFR 312.23(b)). We recommend that the LOA include a description of the 154 information being cross-referenced (e.g., reagent, container, vector manufacturing 155 process) and identify where that information is located (e.g., file name, reference number, 156 volume, page number). Please note that this LOA only allows you to cross-reference the 157 information outlined in the LOA and submitted by the author of the LOA. The LOA does not provide you permission to cross-reference information that was submitted by 158 159 another individual and cross-referenced by the author of the LOA. In other words, you 160 may not cross-reference information that is cross-referenced by the author of the LOA. 161 You are required to submit an LOA for all information submitted by another individual 162 (21 CFR 312.23(b)).

In addition to including LOAs in Module 1 of the CTD, you should list these files in the IND cover sheet (i.e., Form FDA 1571) of each IND submission. If the LOA is absent or inadequate or the information in the cross-referenced file is inadequate for the purpose cited, we will notify you that the information in the cross-referenced file is not sufficient to support your IND. In the event a cross-referenced IND is placed on clinical hold or is withdrawn, your IND may also be placed on clinical hold if critical cross-referenced information is no longer available or adequate.

171

163

135 136

137

138

139

140 141

142 143

144

145

146

147

148

Draft – Not for Implementation

173 IV. SUMMARY OF QUALITY INFORMATION (MODULE 2 OF THE CTD)

174 175 176

177

178

179

180

181

182

183

172

A. General Information

Your IND should contain a general introduction to the gene therapy product under investigation, including a description of its active ingredient(s), mode of action, and proposed clinical use. This summary should include an overview of the manufacturing process, controls in place to ensure product quality, and general information regarding the qualification of components and starting materials. You should describe the composition of the DS and DP. You should indicate if the DS is formulated into a DP for administration or if the DS is used for ex vivo genetic modification of cells.

184 185 Your summary should also include a description of critical quality attributes (COAs) that 186 are relevant to the safety and biological activity of the product as they are understood at 187 the time of submission. For additional information regarding establishing COAs, please 188 see Guidance for Industry: "Q8(R2) Pharmaceutical Development," dated November 189 2009 (Ref. 6), and "Q11 Development and Manufacture of Drug Substances," dated 190 November 2012 (Ref. 7). A CQA is defined as a physical, chemical, biological, or 191 microbiological property or characteristic that should be within an appropriate limit, 192 range, or distribution to ensure the desired product quality. CQAs apply to DS and DP as 193 well as to excipients and in-process materials. Information to support a COA and results 194 from specific studies or published literature may be included in Module 3 of the CTD 195 "Pharmaceutical Development" (section 3.2.P.2) (Ref. 2) or linked to the relevant 196 nonclinical or clinical sections of the application in the CTD. 197

198 As product development progresses, COAs may be used to define DS and DP 199 specifications. Understanding and defining product characteristics that are relevant to the 200 clinical performance of the gene therapy may be challenging, particularly during early 201 stages of product development. Therefore, we recommend that you evaluate a number of 202 product characteristics during early clinical development to help you identify and 203 understand the CQAs of your product. This will also help ensure your ability to assess 204 manufacturing process controls, manufacturing consistency, and product stability as 205 product development advances. This is especially important for sponsors of gene therapy 206 products who are pursuing expedited product development programs (Ref. 8).

207 208

209

B. Drug Substance and Drug Product

Your IND must contain a description of the DS (21 CFR 312.23(a)(7)(iv)(a)) and DP
(21 CFR 312.23(a)(7)(iv)(b)), including the physical, chemical, or biological
characteristics, manufacturing controls, and testing information, to ensure the DS and DP
meet acceptable limits for identity, strength (potency), quality, and purity. For the
purpose of this guidance, a DS is defined as an active ingredient that is intended to
furnish biological activity or other direct effect in the diagnosis, cure, mitigation,

Draft – Not for Implementation

treatment, or prevention of disease or to affect the structure or any function of the human
body. Further, a DP is defined as the finished dosage form that contains the DS,
generally, but not necessarily in association with one or more other ingredients (e.g.,
excipients).

We recognize that distinguishing a DS from a DP may be difficult for some gene therapy products, due to the complex nature of the manufacturing processes. Some gene therapy products may not have defined DS. Others may consist of two or more different DSs that are combined to make the DP. This guidance does not recommend how sponsors should distinguish the DS and DP. However, we do recommend that you provide an explanation to support your DS/DP distinction in the summary information in Module 2 of CTD submissions and that you submit the required information for each DS and DP, as outlined in Module 3 of the CTD (Ref. 2).

When the manufacturing process includes more than one DS, we recommend that you provide separate DS sections for each active ingredient of the final product. The CTD DS sections should follow the format and numbering scheme recommended in Module 3 of FDA "Guidance for Industry: M4Q: The CTD – Quality," dated August 2001 (Ref. 2), and the sections should be distinguished from one another by including the DS name and manufacturer in the heading (e.g., section 3.2.S.1 General Information [name, manufacturer]).

A summary of the available stability data for the DS and the DP, recommended storage conditions, and tentative expiry date, if applicable, should also be included in this section. Information on stability protocols and stability data should be included in the appropriate sections of Module 3.

C. Combination Products

 For submissions in which the gene therapy is a component of a combination product, as defined in 21 CFR 3.2(e), we recommend that you briefly describe the combination product in the summary of your product and briefly state the regulatory status of each component. To clearly delineate the different components of a combination product, you should include manufacturing and engineering information for the gene therapy and drug or device in separate entries of the CTD submission, as described in the FDA "eCTD Technical Conformance Guide: Technical Specifications Document," dated November 2017 (Ref. 4).

D. Product Handling at the Clinical Site

Proper control of the finished DP is critical to your investigational studies. Therefore,
your IND should also include a description of how the product will be shipped to,
received, and handled at the clinical site to ensure safety, product quality, and stability.
Your IND should also include information on shipping conditions, storage conditions,
expiration date/time (if applicable), and chain of custody from the manufacturer to the

261		site of	f admini	stration in the summary information of the CTD. Your summary in Module
262		2 sho	uld also	include information for product handling at the clinical site prior to
263		admir	nistratior	n (such as thawing, washing, or the addition of diluent or adjuvant, loading
264		into a	delivery	y device, and transport to the bedside) and summary information on product
265		stabil	ity prior	to and during administration (e.g., in-device hold times and temperatures).
266				
267		Detai	ls regard	ling product stability after preparation for delivery and delivery device
268		comp	atibility	data should be included in Module 3 (sections 3.2.P.8 and 3.2.P.2.6,
269		respe	ctively)	of the CTD (Ref. 2). Instructions for drug handing and preparation for
270		admir	nistration	at the clinical site (e.g., Pharmacy Manual or Instructions for Use) should
271		be pro	ovided ir	a the "Clinical Study Reports" section of your IND (section 5.3 of the FDA
272		"M4E	E(R2): T	'he CTD – Efficacy: Guidance for Industry." dated July 2017 (Ref. 9)).
273		Detai	led infor	mation about the delivery device may be included in "Regional
274		Infor	mation"	(section 3.2.R of the CTD) (Ref. 2).
275				
276				
270	V	MAN	UFACT	FURING PROCESS AND CONTROL INFORMATION (MODULE 3
278	••	OF T	THE CT	D)
279		01 1		
280	The h	eadinos	s and tex	t below include CTD section numbers in parentheses for reference (Ref. 2)
281	The II	caung		t below include CTD section numbers in parentileses for reference (Ref. 2).
282		A	Drug	Substance (3.2.8)
283		1 10	5145	
284			1.	General Information (3.2.S.1)
285				
286				a. Nomenclature (3.2.S.1.1)
287				
288				You should provide the name of the $DS(s)$. If the name of the DS has
289				changed during clinical development, you should provide the names used
290				to identify the DS at all stages of development. If the United States
291				Adopted Name (USAN) Council has given it a nonproprietary name, you
292				may provide it here
293				
294				b Structure $(3, 2, 8, 1, 2)$
295				5. Structure (3.2.5.1.2)
296				You should submit information on the molecular structure (including
297				genetic sequence) and/or cellular components of the DS. The genetic
297				sequence can be represented in a schematic diagram that includes a man of
200				sequence can be represented in a senemate diagram that metudes a map of relevant regulatory elements (e.g. promoter/enhancer introns, $noly(\Lambda)$)
200				signal) restriction enzyme sites, and functional components (e.g.
301				transgene selection markers). Please note that you should also submit
302				information on your sequence analysis and the annotated sequence data in
302				your IND. We recommend that your sequence data including any data
303				collected to support the genetic stability of your yeator he submitted in
205				"Elucidation of Structure and other Characteristics" (applied in 2.2.5.2.1 of
303				Encouration of Structure and other Characteristics (section 5.2.5.3.1 Of

306	the CTD). More information on our recommendations for sequence
307	analysis is described in "Control of Materials (3.2.S.2.3)" (section
308	V.A.2.c. of this guidance).
309	
310	Some examples of additional information for structure and structural
311	elements of different gene therapy products are outlined below:
312	
313	• For viral vectors, you should include a description of the
314	composition of the viral capsid and envelope structures, as
315	appropriate, and any modifications to these structures (e.g.,
316	modifications to antibody binding sites or tropism-changing
317	elements). We recommend that you include biophysical
318	characteristics (e.g., molecular weight, particle size) and
319	biochemical characteristics (e.g., glycosylation sites). You should
320	also describe the nature of the genome of viral vectors, whether
321	single-stranded, double-stranded, or self-complementary, DNA or
322	RNA, and copy number of genomes per particle.
323	
324	• For bacterial vectors, you should include defining physical and
325	biochemical properties, growth characteristics, genetic markers
326	(e.g., auxotrophic or attenuating mutations, antibiotic resistance)
327	and the location (e.g., on plasmid, episome, or chromosome) and
328	description of any inserted foreign genes and regulatory elements.
329	For additional details on microbial vectors, please see the FDA's
330	Guidance for Industry "Recommendations for Microbial Vectors
331	used for Gene Therapy," dated September 2016 (Ref. 10).
332	
333	• For ex vivo genetically modified cells, you should describe the
334	expected major and minor cell populations as well as the vector
335	that contains the transgene cassette that is transferred into the cell.
336	For cells that have been genetically modified using genome
337	editing, you should describe the gene(s) that are altered and how
338	the change(s) was made (i.e., the gene editing technology used).
339	the enange(s) was made (ner, the gene earling teemioregy asea).
340	c General Properties (3 2 S 1 3)
341	
342	You should provide a section in the IND that describes the composition
343	and properties of the DS including the biological activity and proposed
344	mechanisms of action
345	
346	
347	
348	
2/Q	
J77	

350	2.	Drug Substance Manufacture (3.2.S.2)
252		Manufacturor(s) (2, 2, 5, 2, 1)
352		a. $\operatorname{Mallulacturel}(S)(5.2.5.2.1)$
254		Vou must provide the name and address of each manufacturer including
255		four must provide the name and address of each manufacturer, including
355		contract manufacturer(s), involved in the manufacture, testing, and storage of the DS (21 CED 212 22(a)(7)(iv)(a)). You should indicate the
350		of the DS (21 CFK 512.25(a)(7)(u)). Fou should indicate the responsibility of each manufacturer. Your IND should contain complete
250		information on the DS manufacturer, recordless of whether the process is
350		normation on the DS manufacturer, regardless of whether the process is
339		A sthe spansor of the NID you are ultimately remember of the sofety of
261		As the sponsor of the IND, you are utilitately responsible for the safety of subjects in the alinial investigation (21 CED 212.2), therefore, we
201 262		subjects in the clinical investigation (21 CFR 512.5); therefore, we
302 262		recommend that you and the CMO understand and document your
202 204		respective responsibilities for ensuring product quality. Additional
304		information on quality agreements can be found in FDA's Guidance for
365		Industry, "Contract Manufacturing Arrangements for Drugs: Quality
366		Agreements," dated November 2016 (Ref. 11).
36/		
368		b. Description of Manufacturing Process and Process Controls
369		(3.2.8.2.2)
370		
3/1		Y our description of the DS manufacturing process and process controls
372		should include all of the following, as applicable: cell culture;
3/3		transduction; cell expansion; harvest(s); purification; filling; and storage
3/4		and shipping conditions. Your description should also accurately
3/5		represent your process and process controls. Changes and updates to this
3/6		information should be submitted as an amendment to the IND prior to
3//		implementation (21 CFR 312.23(a)($/$)(iii)), as indicated in section II.
378		Background of this guidance.
379		
380		1. Batch and Scale
381		
382		A description of how you define each manufacturing run (i.e.,
383		batch, lot, other) should be submitted with an explanation of the
384		batch (or lot ³) numbering system. You should clearly state
385		whether any pooling of harvests or intermediates occurs during
386		manufacturing. If pooling is necessary during production, we
387		recommend that you control the storage conditions (e.g., time,
388		temperature, container) for each pool and that you describe the
389		testing that is performed prior to pooling to ensure the quality of
390		each pool.
391		

³ For purpose of this guidance, batch and lot are used interchangeably.

392	We also recommend that you provide an explanation for how the
393	batch scale is defined (e.g., bioreactor volume, cell processing
394	capacity) and how the DS is quantified (e.g., vector genomes,
395	transducing units, infectious particles, mass, number of gene
396	modified cells). When known, please include the yield expected
397	per batch.
398	1
399	ii. Manufacturing Process
400	
401	The description of your manufacturing process should include a
402	flow diagram(s) and a detailed narrative. Your description should
403	clearly identify any process controls and in-process testing (e.g.
404	titer bioburden viability impurities) as well as acceptable
405	operating parameters (e.g. process times temperature ranges cell
406	nassage number nH (O2 dissolved O2 glucose level)
407	passage number, pri, eo ₂ , uissorved o ₂ , grueose lever).
408	We recommend the evaluation of operating parameters on a
409	periodic basis to ensure process control and allow for trending and
410	statistical analyses if deemed appropriate to monitor process
410	consistency. You should clearly describe any environmental
411	controls as well as tracking and sogragation procedures that are in
412	place to provent cross contamination throughout the monufacturing
415	prace to prevent cross-containination throughout the manufacturing
414	process.
415	
416	iii. Cell Culture
41/	
418	The description of all cell culture conditions should contain
419	sufficient detail to make understandable any of the process steps
420	that apply, process timing, culture conditions, hold times and
421	transfer steps, and materials used (e.g., media components,
422	bags/flasks). You should describe whether the cell culture system
423	is open or closed and any aseptic processing steps. If extensive
424	culture times are needed, you should outline the in-process controls
425	you have in place to monitor cell quality (e.g., viability, bioburden,
426	pH, dissolved O ₂). Expectations for media components and cell
427	bank qualification are outlined in this guidance under "Control of
428	Materials (3.2.S.2.3)" (section V.A.2.c. of this guidance).
429	
430	iv. Vector Production
431	
432	For the manufacture of gene therapy vectors (e.g., viral vectors,
433	bacterial plasmids, mRNA), you should provide a description of all
434	production and purification procedures. Production procedures
435	should include a description of the cell substrate, cell culture and
436	expansion steps, transfection or infection procedures, harvest steps,

437	hold times, vector purification (e.g., centrifugation, column
438	purification, density gradients), concentration or buffer exchange
439	steps, and the reagents/components used during these processes.
440	You should outline any in-process testing to ensure vector quality
441	as appropriate (e.g., titer, impurities).
442	
443	You should describe whether the DS will be formulated into the
444	DP for direct administration or whether it will be formulated for ex
445	vivo genetic modification of cells, as outlined in section IV.B. As
446	an active ingredient, the same level of control should be applied to
447	each DS, and each DS should be manufactured under appropriate
448	Good Manufacturing Practice (GMP) conditions. For more
449	information on your Quality Unit and GMP manufacturing, see
450	"Process Validation and/or Evaluation (3.2.S.2.5)" (section
451	V.A.2.e. of this guidance).
452	
453	v. Genetically Modified Cell Production
454	
455	If your product consists of genetically modified cells, your cell
456	processing description should contain sufficient detail to make
457	understandable any of the following process steps that apply:
458	source material (e.g., autologous or allogeneic cells); collection of
459	cellular source material (e.g., leukapheresis, biopsy); storage at the
460	collection site; shipping to and handling at the manufacturing
461	facility; cell selection, isolation, or enrichment steps (including
462	methods, devices, reagents); cell expansion conditions; hold times
463	and transfer steps; and cell harvest, purification, if any, and
464	materials used.
465	
466	You should also provide a complete description of all procedures
467	used for gene modification (such as transfection, infection or
468	electroporation of vectors, or genome editing components) and any
469	additional culture, cell selection, or treatments after modification.
470	
471	vi. Irradiated Cells
472	
473	If your product contains or is processed with irradiated cells, you
474	should provide documentation for the calibration of the irradiator
475	source and provide supporting data to demonstrate that the
476	irradiated cells are rendered replication-incompetent, while still
477	maintaining their desired characteristics.
478	-
479	
480	
481	

482	vii. Filling, Storage, and Transportation (Shipping)
483	Ware describes a late it description and identification
484	You should provide a detailed description and identify any
485	associated process controls for formulation, filling, storage, and
480	snipping of the DS, if applicable. You should also describe the
487	container used for storage and snipping of the DS. we recommend
488	that you describe procedures that are in place to ensure appropriate
489	storage and transport (as needed).
490	
491	c. Control of Materials (3.2.S.2.3)
492	
493	You must provide a list of all materials used in manufacturing
494	(21 CFR 312.23(a)(7)(iv)(b)) and a description of the quality and control
495	of these materials. This information may be provided in tabular format
496	and include the identity of the material, the supplier, the quality (e.g.,
497	clinical-grade, FDA-approved), the source of material (e.g., animal,
498	human, insect), and the stage at which each material is used in the
499	manufacturing process (e.g., culture media, vector purification). This
500	includes information on components, such as cells, cell and viral banking
501	systems, and reagents, as described in more detail below; it also includes
502	raw materials and equipment, such as culture bags, culture flasks,
503	chromatography matrices, and tubing, that come into contact with the
504	product.
505	
506	You should provide documentation that the materials used for
507	manufacturing meet standards appropriate for their intended use (e.g., test
508	results, certificates of analysis (COAs), package inserts). COAs for
509	materials can be provided in "Facilities and Equipment" (section 3.2.A.1
510	of the CTD) and hyperlinked to relevant sections of your IND. We
511	recommend that you use FDA-approved or cleared or other clinical-grade
512	materials, when they are available. If the material is not FDA-approved or
513	cleared (or in the absence of recognized standards), additional information
514	on the manufacturing and/or testing may be needed to evaluate the safety
515	and quality of the material. The extent of testing will depend on the
516	specific material and the manner in which it is used in the manufacturing
517	process.
518	
519	i. Reagents
520	6
521	For purpose of this guidance, reagents (or ancillary materials) are
522	those materials used for manufacturing (e.g., cell growth.
523	differentiation, selection, purification, or other critical
524	manufacturing steps) that are not intended to be part of the final
525	product. Examples include fetal bovine serum, digestive enzymes
526	(e.g., trypsin, collagenase, DNase/RNase, restriction
	(, a) point, contagenation, 21 (abort) (abort) (abort)

527	endonucleases), growth factors, cytokines, monoclonal antibodies,
528	antibody-coated beads, antibiotics, media, media components, and
529	detergents. These reagents can affect the safety, potency, and
530	purity of the final product, especially by introducing adventitious
531	agents or other impurities.
532	
533	For biologically sourced reagents, including human, bovine, and
534	porcine-derived materials, we recommend that you refer to the
535	FDA Guidance for Industry: "Characterization and Qualification
536	of Cell Substrates and Other Biological Materials Used in the
537	Production of Viral Vaccines for Infectious Disease Indications,"
538	dated February 2010 (Ref. 12). Animal-derived materials increase
539	the risk of introducing adventitious agents. Certain animal-derived
540	materials, such as sera, are complex mixtures that are difficult to
541	standardize, and such materials may have significant batch-to-
542	batch variations that may affect the reproducibility of your
543	manufacturing process or the quality of your final product. We
544	recommend that you use non-animal-derived reagents whenever
545	nossible (for example serum-free tissue culture media and
546	recombinant proteases)
547	recombinant procedses).
548	ii Bovine
549	n. Dovine
550	We recommend that you provide information on any hovine
55 1	material used in manufacturing including the source of the
557	material: information on the location where the herd was born
553	raised and slaughtered; and any other information relevant to the
557 557	risk of transmissible spongiform encephalonathy (TSE). If serum
555	is used, we recommend that it has a irredicted to reduce the risk of
555 556	is used, we recommend that it be γ -infadiated to reduce the fisk of adventitious agents
557	auventitious agents.
559	Poving materials used in production of responts which are in turn
550	Bovine materials used in production of reagents, which are, in turn,
559	used in manufacturing a product, should also be identified, and the
500 561	source and qualification of bovine material should be documented.
501 562	Very should merride COAs for all berring meterial late used in the
562	You should provide COAs for all bovine material lots used in the
563	manufacture and establishment of cell and virus banks to document
564	that these materials are compliant with the requirements for the
505 500	ingredients of animal origin used for production of biologics
366	described in 9 CFR 113.53.
567	
568	
569	
570	
571	

572 573	iii. Porcine
574	You should provide COAs for all porcine material lots used in
575	manufacture and establishment of cell and virus banks to document
576	that these materials are compliant with the requirements for the
577	ingredients of animal origin used for production of biologics
578	described in 9 CFR 113.53. In addition, porcine reagents should
579	be tested for porcine circovirus (PCV) 1 and 2 and porcine
580	parvovirus.
581	1
582	iv. Murine or Monoclonal Antibodies
583	
584	Monoclonal antibodies used in manufacturing that have product
585	contact should be tested as per the recommendations described in
586	the FDA "Points to Consider in the Manufacture and Testing of
587	Monoclonal Antibody Products for Human Use." dated February
588	1997 (Ref. 13). Alternatively, you may provide a letter of
589	authorization to cross-reference this information in a different
590	regulatory submission (IND or MF). You should also consider that
591	many monoclonal antibodies and recombinant proteins (such as
592	cytokines) used during the manufacture of gene therapy products
593	may be purified by affinity chromatography, using antibodies
594	generated from mouse hybridomas. This may introduce the risk of
595	contamination with adventitious agents from rodents.
596	
597	v. Human Source
598	
599	If human albumin is used, you should use FDA-approved products
600	and have procedures in place to ensure that no recalled lots were
601	used during manufacture or preparation of the product.
602	
603	If human AB serum is used (e.g., for ex vivo genetically modified
604	cells), you should ensure the serum is processed from blood or
605	plasma collected at FDA licensed facilities. Source Plasma, which
606	is often used to make human AB serum, must be collected as
607	described in 21 CFR Part 640, Subpart G. Source Plasma is not
608	tested as extensively as blood products intended for infusion, and
609	we recommend that you ensure the AB serum used in your
610	manufacturing does not have the potential to transmit infectious
611	disease. For example, if your serum is derived from Source
612	Plasma, you may reduce the risk of infectious disease by
613	conducting additional testing for relevant transfusion-transmitted
614	infections. Alternatively, including viral inactivation or clearance
615	steps in the production of AB serum from Source Plasma may be
616	an acceptable alternative.

617	
618	For all other reagents that are human-derived, you should identify
619	whether the reagent is a licensed product (e.g., HSA, IL-2) or is
620	clinical or research grade and provide a COA or information
621	regarding testing of the donor or reagent.
622	
623	vi. Cells - Autologous and Allogeneic Cells or Tissue
624	
625	For autologous or allogeneic cells or tissue, you should provide a
626	detailed description of the cell source, the collection procedure,
627	and any related handling, culturing, storage, and testing that is
628	performed prior to use in manufacture. Your description should
629	include the following information:
630	
631	• materials used for collection (including devices, reagents,
632	tubing, and containers);
633	
634	 method of cell collection (i.e., standard blood draw or
635	apheresis);
636	
637	 enrichment steps, if performed;
638	
639	 labeling and tracking of collected samples;
640	
641	 hold times; and
642	
643	 transportation conditions to the manufacturing facility.
644	
645	As an example, for cells collected by leukapheresis: you should
646	provide a detailed description of the collection device(s); operating
647	parameters; volumes or number of cells to be collected; and how
648	the collected material is labeled, stored, tracked, and transported to
649	the manufacturing facility.
650	
651	For multi-center clinical trials, establishing standardized
652	procedures for cell collection and handling across all collection
653	sites is critical to assuring the quality and safety of the final
654	product as well as ensuring control of the manufacturing process.
655	In your IND, you should include a list of collection sites, their
656	FDA Establishment Identifier, and any accreditations for
657	compliance with established standards (e.g., Foundation for the
658	Accreditation of Cellular Therapy (FACT)), if applicable.
659	
660	
661	

Draft – Not for Implementation

A. Autologous Cells

You are not required to make a donor eligibility determination or to perform donor screening on autologous cells or tissues (21 CFR 1271.90(a)(1)). However, you should determine whether your manufacturing procedures increase the risk to the patient by further propagation of pathogenic agents that may be present in the donor. You should also describe precautions to prevent the spread of viruses or other adventitious agents to persons other than the autologous recipient (Ref. 14).

B. Allogeneic Cells

For allogeneic cells or tissues, you must perform donor screening and testing, as required in 21 CFR Part 1271, Subpart C, except for those cells and tissues that meet the exceptions in 21 CFR 1271.90(a). Donors of all types of cells and tissues must be screened for risk factors and clinical evidence of relevant communicable disease agents and diseases, including: human immunodeficiency virus (HIV); hepatitis B virus (HBV); hepatitis C virus (HCV); human TSE, including Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease; and Treponema pallidum (syphilis) (21 CFR 1271.75). In addition, donors of viable leukocyte-rich cells or tissues should be screened for human T-lymphotropic virus (HTLV). You must also test a specimen of donor cells or tissue for evidence of infection due to relevant communicable disease agents, including: HIV-1; HIV-2; HBV: HCV: syphilis: and if the material is leukocyte-rich cells or tissue, HTLV-1, HTLV-2, and cytomegalovirus (21 CFR 1271.85). For donor eligibility testing, you must use appropriate FDA-licensed, approved, or cleared donor screening tests (21 CFR 1271.80(c)). You should also refer to recent Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research (CBER) guidance documents on donor eligibility for additional information on testing for emerging relevant communicable disease agents and diseases (e.g., West Nile virus (WNV), Zika virus). If cord blood or other maternally-derived tissue is used, you must perform screening and testing on the birth mothers, as described in 21 CFR 1271.80(a).

703 704 705

662

663 664

665

666 667

668

669

670

671

672

673 674

675 676

677

678

679

680

681

682

683

684

685

686

687

688

689

690

691

692

693

694

695

696

697

698

699

700

701

702

....

706	Allogeneic cells from a single donor or source tissue may
707	sometimes be expanded and stored for greater consistency
708	and control in manufacturing. In these situations, we
709	generally recommend that you qualify allogeneic master
710	and working cell banks in the same way as cell banks used
711	for production of viral vectors (see "Banking Systems,"
712	below), provided that you have sufficient material for this
713	testing. In these situations, we are most concerned about
714	the introduction of adventitious agents (e.g., viruses,
715	bacteria, mycoplasma) during the bank manufacturing
716	process, especially from any bovine or porcine materials,
717	animal feeder cells, other animal-derived reagents, or
718	human AB serum, if used. If your allogeneic cell bank is
719	small, we may recommend abbreviated cell bank
720	qualification. In this case, please consult with the Quality
721	Reviewer of your file for more information on appropriate
722	qualification of small scale allogeneic cell banks.
723	
724	vii. Banking Systems (Starting Materials)
725	
726	A banking system improves control and consistency in the
727	manufacturing of many biologics. Banking assures an adequate
728	supply of equivalent, well-characterized material for production
729	over the expected lifetime of production. For these reasons,
730	banked materials are a common starting point for many routine
731	production applications. We outline our current thinking for the
732	qualification of different banking systems below, including banks
733	of cell substrates for production of viral vectors, banks of
734	bacterial/microbial cells, and banks of viral vectors. We
735	recommend that you provide a summary of the testing and COAs
736	in this section. Information on bank qualification and adventitious
737	agent testing should also be included in your comprehensive
738	"Adventitious Agents Safety Evaluation" (section 3.2.A.2 of the
739	CTD).
740	
741	viii. Master Cell Banks Used as Substrates for Production of
742	Viral Vectors
743	
744	Prior to selecting a cell line for viral vector manufacturing, you
745	should carefully consider characteristics of the cells that may
746	impact the safety of the final product (such as presence of
747	tumorigenic sequences). This is especially important when the
748	viral vector co-packages non-vector sequences, such as adeno-
749	associated virus (AAV) (see "Impurities (3.2.S.3.2)" section
750	V.A.3.b. of this guidance). We also recommend that you consider

Draft – Not for Implementation

cell attributes that can affect production capacity (e.g., growth characteristics, vector production capacity), prior to generation of a cell bank.

In your IND, you should provide a description of the history and detailed derivation of the source material for the cell bank. Your description should include information on cell source (including species of origin); how the bank was generated (e.g., from a single colony isolate or through limiting dilution); testing performed to characterize the bank; and if applicable, materials used to genetically modify the source material (i.e., packaging cell line).

When a cell substrate has been genetically modified (for example, to provide viral proteins to allow virus replication or packaging), you should provide a description of the materials used for the genetic modification, including information on the quality and control of the vectors used to introduce the genetic changes. Materials used to manufacture process intermediates should be sufficiently characterized to ensure safety and purity of the final gene therapy product. For more information regarding plasmid intermediates that are used for further manufacture, please see "Control of Critical Steps and Intermediates (3.2.S.2.4)" (section V.A.2.d. of this guidance).

For the banked material, itself, we recommend that you provide information on how the cell banks are stored and maintained as well as detailed information on qualification to adequately establish the safety, identity, purity, and stability of the cells used in your manufacturing process. Additional sources of information regarding qualification of cell substrates can be found in the FDA guidance "Q5D Quality of Biotechnological/Biological Products: Derivation and Characterization of Cell Substrates Used for Production of Biotechnological/Biological Products" (63 FR 50244, September 21, 1998) (Ref. 15) and FDA's Guidance for Industry: "Characterization and Qualification of Cell Substrates and Other Biological Materials Used in the Production of Viral Vaccines for Infectious Disease Indications," dated February 2010 (Ref. 12).

Cell bank qualification includes tests to:

• Ensure absence of microbial contamination, including sterility, mycoplasma (and spiroplasma for insect cells), and in vivo and in vitro testing for adventitious viral agents. For cell lines used for production of vectors, we

796 797 798 799 800 801 802	recommend that you test for retroviral contamination, using reverse transcriptase (RT) assays and transmission electron microscopic (TEM) analysis. The presence of an adventitious viral agent in your bank should be vigorously investigated, and re-derivation of the bank should be considered.
802 803 804 805 806 807	 For additional information on the analytical methods used for cell bank qualification, please see "Analytical Procedures (3.2.S.4.2)" (section V.A.4.b. of this guidance).
808 809 810 811 812 813 814	- For cell lines that have been exposed to bovine or porcine components (e.g., serum, serum components, trypsin), appropriate testing would include testing for bovine or porcine adventitious agents. See further discussion on bovine and porcine reagents, above.
814 815 •	Ensure absence of species-specific pathogens.
816 817 818 819 820 821 822 823	- For human cells, this may include testing for cytomegalovirus (CMV), HIV-1 & 2, HTLV-1 &-2, human herpesvirus-6 and -8 (HHV-6 & -8), JC virus, BK virus, Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), human parvovirus B19, HBV, human papillomavirus (HPV), and HCV, as appropriate.
824 825 826 827 828 829	- For other animal or insect cells, we recommend tests for species-specific viruses, as appropriate. For instance, for Vero cells, we recommend testing for simian polyomavirus SV40 and simian retrovirus.
830 831 832 833 834	- For insect cells, you may evaluate the presence of arboviruses in a susceptible cell line, such as baby hamster kidney (BHK21) cells. Insect cell lines with known viral contamination should be avoided.
835 836 837 838 839	Identify cells. Identify your cells through tests that distinguish them from other cell lines used in your facility. For cell lines that you have purchased from a type collection or received from another investigator, we recommend master cell bank (MCB) testing to confirm the

840	purity of the cells by genetic analysis (i.e., short tandem
841	repeat analysis or other profiling analysis).
842	
843	• Establish stability of the cell bank. Stability can be
844	assessed by measuring viability of cells over time after
845	cryopreservation. We also recommend a one-time test of
846	end of production cells (EOP) or mock production cells of
847	similar passage history, to be tested for their suitability to
848	produce your vector. For stable retroviral vector producer
849	cells, we recommend that you test the genetic stability of
850	the gene insert in the EOP cells.
851	
852	• Assess the ability of new cell lines to form tumors. We
853	recommend that you perform tumorigenicity tests for cell
854	lines that have not been previously characterized for their
855	potential to form tumors. This test would not be necessary
856	for cells known to form tumors; please see additional
857	information on testing for process-related impurities under
858	"Drug Substance Characterization (3.2.S.3)" (section
859	V.A.3.b.i. of this guidance).
860	
861	ix. Working Cell Banks
862	
863	A Working Cell Bank (WCB) may be derived from one or more
864	vials of the MCB. The information needed to document
865	qualification and characterization for a WCB is less extensive than
866	that needed for the MCB. WCB testing should include but is not
867	limited to sterility, mycoplasma, identity, and in vitro adventitious
868	agent tests. For additional information on the analytical methods
869	used for WCB qualification, please see "Analytical Procedures
870	(3.2.S.4.2)" (section V.A.4.b. of this guidance).
871	
872	x. Bacterial or Microbial Master Cell Banks
873	
874	For all bacterial or microbial (e.g., yeast) MCBs, you should
875	describe the genotype and source of the microbial cells. Bacterial
876	MCBs are frequently used as a starting material to generate
877	plasmid DNA, which can be used as a vector for gene transfer or as
878	a manufacturing intermediate for other gene therapy products, such
879	as the AAV or lentiviral vectors. Microbial MCBs also may be
880	used to generate a microbial vector for gene therapy. You should

⁴ Reid Y, Storts D, Riss T, Minor L. Authentication of Human Cell Lines by STR DNA Profiling Analysis. In: Sittampalam GS, Coussens NP, Brimacombe K. et al., editors. Assay Guidance Manual. Bethesda (MD): Eli Lilly & Company and the <u>National Center for Advancing Translational Sciences</u>; 2004. <u>https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK144066/</u>.

881	provide a detailed description of the history and derivation of the
882	materials used to generate the cell bank, including information on
883	how plasmid vectors were designed and constructed. For the bank
884	material, itself, you should provide information on how the
885	material was generated and how the bank is stored and maintained
886	as well as detailed information on qualification of the bank
887	(including cell bank COAs) to adequately establish the safety,
888	identity, purity, and stability of the microbial cell preparation used
889	in the manufacturing process.
890	
891	For bacterial cell banks used to manufacture a DNA plasmid, we
892	recommend MCB testing include:
893	
894	• Bacterial host strain identity;
895	
896	• Plasmid presence, confirmed by bacterial growth on
897	selective medium, restriction digest, or DNA sequencing;
898	
899	Bacterial cell count:
900	,
901	• Bacterial host strain purity (no inappropriate organisms.
902	negative for bacteriophage):
903	
904	• Plasmid identity by restriction enzyme (RE) analysis:
905	
906	• Full plasmid sequencing. We recommend that you fully
907	sequence plasmid vectors and submit an annotated
908	sequence for the vector, as described in more detail in the
909	section below on viral vector banks; and
910	
911	• Transgene expression and/or activity.
912	
913	For microbial cell banks used to manufacture a microbial vector.
914	our recommendations for MCB testing are outlined in the
915	Guidance for Industry, "Recommendations for Microbial Vectors
916	used for Gene Therapy," dated September 2016 (Ref. 10).
917	
918	xi. Master Viral Banks
919	
920	Viral banks may be expanded for viral vector production, or they
921	may be used as helper viruses for manufacturing non-renlicating
922	vectors (e.g., AAV or gutless adenovirus). You should provide a
923	detailed description of the history and derivation of the source or
924	and a second of the motory and a second of the boulde of

925	seed materials for these banks. You should describe how the seed
926	stock was generated and what cells and animal-derived materials
927	were used in the derivation process.
928	
929	A gene map of the final vector and vector intermediates is useful
930	when describing the history and derivation of recombinant viral
931	vectors. We recommend that you state whether the seed material
932	was plaque-purified, purified by limiting dilution, or rescued from
933	DNA or RNA clones and how many times it was passaged, during
934	expansion.
935	
936	For the banked material, itself, you should describe the
937	manufacturing process and the conditions under which the banked
938	material was generated, for example, in a research laboratory or a
939	GMP facility. We recommend that you list animal-derived
940	materials used in the generation of the bank and state whether the
941	master virus bank (MVB) is expected to represent a single clone or
942	a distribution of viral variants or sequences.
943	-
944	We also recommend that you provide information on how the bank
945	is stored and maintained as well as detailed information on the
946	qualification of the bank to adequately establish the safety.
947	identity, purity, and stability of the virus preparation used in the
948	manufacturing process. If a COA is available, it should be
949	submitted to the IND. For additional information on the analytical
950	methods used for MVB qualification, please see "Analytical
951	Procedures (3.2.S.4.2)" (section V.A.4.b. of this guidance).
952	
953	Viral vector bank qualification includes tests to:
954	1
955	• Ensure absence of contamination, including sterility,
956	mycoplasma, and in vivo and in vitro testing for
957	adventitious viral agents.
958	
959	• Ensure absence of specific pathogens that may originate
960	from the cell substrate, such as human viruses if the cell
961	line used to produce the MVB is of human origin, or
962	nathogens specific to the origin of the production cell line
963	(e.g. murine non-human primate avian insect)
964	(0.5., marine, non naman primate, avian, insect).
965	• Ensure absence of replication competent virus in
966	replication incompetent vectors
967	represent neonpetent vectors.
968	• Ensure viral titer or concentration
060	
202	

970 971 972 973	• Ensure sensitivity to anti-viral drugs, as applicable, for example, herpes simplex virus (HSV) sensitivity to ganciclovir.
974	• Ensure transgene activity, if appropriate.
975 976	Identify the viral vector and therapeutic transgene (e.g.
977	Southern blot or restriction endonuclease analysis), as
978	needed.
979	
980	• Ensure the correct genetic sequence. We recommend that
981	you fully sequence all vectors that are 40 kb or smaller,
982	analyze the sequence, and submit an annotated sequence of
983	the entire vector. You should provide an evaluation of the
904	significance of an discrepancies between the expected
986	an evaluation of the significance of any unexpected
987	sequence elements, including open reading frames. We
988	have the following recommendations, regarding sequence
989	analysis:
990	5
991	- We recommend that viral vectors be sequenced
992	from the MVB, when possible.
993	
994	- For integrating viral vectors, we recommend that
995	you perform DNA sequencing on the integrated
996	vector. The material for sequencing can be
997	collected from the producer cell line or, in the case
998	of vectors generated by transient transfection, from
999	material collected from cells that you have
1000	transduced after isolation of a vector lot.
1001	For other situations in which no MVP exists
1002	- For other situations in which no wide Exists, sequencing should be performed from the DS or
1003	DP For example AAV vectors are typically made
1005	by plasmid transfection and the AAV vector is
1006	harvested directly from transfected cells to produce
1007	a DS. In this situation, we recommend that you
1008	sequence one or more lots (either material from DS
1009	or DP) to confirm that the vector sequence is stable,
1010	during manufacturing.
1011	
1012	- For viral vectors greater than 40 kb, you should
1013	summarize the extent and results of sequence
1014	analysis that you have performed, including any

1015	testing performed by restriction endonuclease
1016	analysis. You should perform sequence analysis of
1017	the gene insert, flanking regions, and any regions of
1018	the vector that are modified or could be susceptible
1019	to recombination. The entire vector sequence will
1020	be necessary to confirm identity for licensure.
1021	
1022	xii. Working Viral Banks
1023	
1024	A working viral bank (WVB) may be derived from one or more
1025	vials of the MVB, and the information needed to document
1026	qualification and characterization of the WVB is less extensive
1027	than that needed for the MVB. You should describe the process
1028	used to generate the WVB and whether animal-derived materials
1029	were used. Testing for WVB should include but is not limited to
1030	sterility, mycoplasma, identity, and in vitro adventitious agent
1031	tests.
1032	
1033	d. Control of Critical Steps and Intermediates (3.2.S.2.4)
1034	
1035	You should describe the control of critical steps and intermediates in the
1036	manufacturing process. Critical control steps include those outlined in the
1037	"Description of Manufacturing Process and Process Controls" (section
1038	3.2.S.2.2 of the CTD and section V.A.2.b. of this guidance). We
1039	recommend that you also consider any steps in which in-process tests with
1040	acceptance criteria are performed as critical control steps.
1041	
1042	You should provide information on the quality and control of
1043	intermediates. Manufacturing intermediates should be defined by the
1044	manufacturer. Intermediates may include material from collection or hold
1045	steps, such as temporary storage of bulk harvest, concentration steps, or
1046	purification intermediates (e.g., column fractions or eluate). The duration
1047	of production steps and hold times should be controlled and recorded to
1048	facilitate the establishment of process limits and to allow for future
1049	validation of each step and hold time within the proposed limits in support
1050	of a license application.
1051	
1052	Intermediates in gene therapy manufacturing may also include DNA
1053	plasmids that are used in the manufacture of other gene therapy products,
1054	such as AAV or lentiviral vectors. We recommend that DNA plasmid
1055	intermediates be derived from qualified banks, as described in more detail
1056	above and in "Control of Materials (3.2.S.2.3)" (section V.A.2.c. of this
1057	guidance). In addition, we recommend that you provide information on
1058	the plasmid manufacturing procedures, reagents, and plasmid
1059	specifications for use. In general, we recommend that this testing include

1060	assays to ensure the identity, purity, potency, and safety of the final
1061	product. For a DNA plasmid, this may include sterility, endotoxin, purity
1062	(including percent of supercoiled form and residual cell DNA, RNA, and
1063	protein levels), and identity testing (restriction digest and sequencing if
1064	sequencing was not performed on the bacterial bank). A COA
1065	documenting plasmid quality testing should be included in the IND.
1066	
1067	e. Process Validation and/or Evaluation (3.2.S.2.5)
1068	
1069	Process validation studies are generally or typically not required for early
1070	stage manufacturing, and thus, most original IND submissions will not
1071	include process performance qualification. We recommend that you use
1072	early stage manufacturing experience to evaluate the need for process
1073	improvements and to support process validation studies in the future.
1074	1 11 1
1075	INDs at all stages of development should have established written
1076	standard operating procedures (SOPs) to ensure proper manufacturing
1077	control and oversight. Manufacturing oversight is usually performed by a
1078	dedicated Quality Unit, the duties of which include implementing
1079	procedures to prevent microbial contamination, cross-contamination, and
1080	product mix-ups. Your Quality Unit should have procedures in place to
1081	investigate lot failures, out-of-specification results, and ways to implement
1082	corrective actions. Your IND should include a description of your Quality
1083	Unit, including the manner in which quality control testing and oversight
1084	are separated from the manufacturing unit.
1085	
1086	Additional information on quality systems and process validation can be
1087	found in the following FDA guidance documents: "Guidance for Industry:
1088	CGMP for Phase 1 Investigational Drugs," dated July 2008 (Ref. 16);
1089	"Quality Systems Approach to Pharmaceutical CGMP Regulations," dated
1090	September 2006 (Ref. 17); and "Process Validation: General Principles
1091	and Practices," dated January 2011 (Ref. 18). The application of current
1092	good manufacturing practices (CGMPs) is required under section
1093	501(a)(2)(B) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act at all stages of
1094	clinical investigation. However, the CGMP regulations (21 CFR Part 211)
1095	are not required for the manufacture of most investigational new drugs
1096	under Phase 1 INDs (See Ref. 16).
1097	
1098	f. Manufacturing Process Development (3.2.S.2.6)
1099	
1100	You should provide a description and discussion of the developmental
1101	history of the manufacturing process described in "Description of
1102	Manufacturing Process and Process Controls" (section 3.2.S.2.2 of the
1103	CTD).
1104	

1105		For early stage INDs, there may be differences between the manufacturing
1106		and testing of the toxicology lots and the material you plan to use in the
1107		clinical studies. For later stage INDs, there may be changes to the
1108		manufacturing process as part of process development or optimization. In
1109		both situations, we recommend that you describe how manufacturing
1110		differences are expected to impact product performance. If you make
1111		significant manufacturing changes, then comparability studies may be
1112		necessary to determine the impact of these changes on the identity, purity,
1113		potency, and safety of the product. The extent of comparability testing
1114		will depend on the manufacturing change, the ability of analytical methods
1115		to detect changes in the product, and the stage of clinical development.
1116		For first-in-human studies, any differences between toxicology lots and
1117		clinical lots should be assessed for their impact on product safety. For
1118		later phase studies, especially those designed to measure product efficacy,
1119		differences in clinical lots should be assessed for their impact on product
1120		safety and activity.
1121		5
1122		Please note that it is important to retain samples of the DS and
1123		manufacturing intermediates, when possible, in the event that
1124		comparability studies are necessary during future product development.
1125		
1126	3.	Drug Substance Characterization (3.2.S.3)
1127		2
1128		a. Elucidation of Structure and Other Characteristics (3.2.S.3.1)
1129		
1130		We recommend that you include annotated sequence data for your vector
1131		in the original IND submission. In addition, we recommend that you
1132		provide any further information confirming the primary, secondary, or
1133		higher order structure; post-translational modifications; and/or distribution
1134		of cell types for the DS if it has not already been described in "Structure"
1135		(section 3.2.S.1.2 of the CTD).
1136		
1137		b. Impurities (3.2.8.3.2)
1138		
1139		We recommend that your manufacturing process be designed to remove
1140		process- and product-related impurities and that you have tests in place to
1141		measure levels of residual impurities. You should describe your test
1142		procedures in the IND with appropriate limits. Your initial specification
1143		for impurities may be refined with additional manufacturing experience.
1144		We recommend that you measure impurities throughout product
1145		development, as this will help ensure product safety, contribute to your
1146		understanding of the manufacturing process, and provide a baseline for
1147		potential manufacturing changes in the future.
1148		
1149		

1150	i. Process-Related Impurities
1151	
1152	We recommend testing for process-related impurities. These
1153	include but are not limited to residual cell substrate proteins,
1154	extraneous nucleic acid sequences, helper virus contaminants (i.e.,
1155	infectious virus, viral DNA, viral proteins), and reagents used
1156	during manufacture, such as cytokines, growth factors, antibodies,
1157	selection beads, serum, and solvents.
1158	
1159	A common process-related impurity for many vector preparations
1160	is residual nucleic acid, such as cell substrate DNA, which can co-
1161	purify with the vector. Some vectors, including AAV, can also
1162	package (i.e., inside the viral capsid) a large amount of plasmid
1163	DNA sequences (used during transfection) as well as cellular
1164	DNA. The presence of these impurities may have adverse effects
1165	on product quality and safety. We recommend that you optimize
1166	your manufacturing process to reduce non-vector DNA
1167	contamination in your product. Additionally, you should monitor
1168	and control the amount of extraneous nucleic acid sequences in
1169	your product.
1170	
1171	Since some cell substrates also harbor tumorigenic genetic
1172	sequences or retroviral sequences that may be capable of
1173	transmitting infection, we recommend that you take steps to
1174	minimize the biological activity of any residual DNA associated
1175	with your vector. This can be accomplished by reducing the size
1176	of the DNA to below the size of a functional gene and by
1177	decreasing the amount of residual DNA. We recommend that you
1178	limit the amount of residual DNA for continuous non-tumorigenic
1179	cells to less than 10 ng/dose and the DNA size to below
1180	approximately 200 base pairs.
1181	
1182	If you are using cells that are tumor-derived (e.g., Hela) or with
1183	tumorigenic phenotypes (e.g., 293, also known as HEK293T) or
1184	other characteristics that give rise to special concerns, more
1185	stringent limitation of residual DNA quantities may be needed to
1186	assure product safety. In addition to controlling host cell DNA
1187	content and size, as described above, you should also control the
1188	level of relevant transforming sequences in your product with
1189	acceptance criteria that limit patient exposure. For example,
1190	products made in 293 cells should be tested for adenovirus E1 and
1191	SV40 Large T antigen sequences. Your tests should be
1192	appropriately controlled and of sufficient sensitivity and specificity
1193	to determine the level of these sequences in your product.
1194	

1195		Some vectors, including AAV, can package a large amount of non-
1196		vector DNA (e.g., plasmid DNA, helper virus sequences, cellular
1197		DNA), and it may not be possible to remove or reduce this DNA
1198		from the product to a level sufficient to assure safety. Therefore,
1199		we strongly recommend that the cell lines and helper sequences
1200		used to make viral vectors that package non-vector DNA, such as
1201		AAV, be carefully chosen to reduce the risks of the product.
1202		
1203		ii. Product-Related Impurities
1204		1
1205		Typical product-related impurities for viral vectors may include
1206		defective interfering particles, non-infectious particles, empty
1207		cansid particles, or replicating recombinant virus contaminants.
1208		These impurities should be measured and may be reported as a
1200		ratio for example full empty particles or virus particles infectious
1210		units
1210		
1211		For ex vivo genetically modified cells, product-related impurities
1212		include non-target cells, which may be present after selection or
1213		enrichment and unmodified target cells, which may be present
1211		after the ex vivo modification step. We recommend that you
1215		evaluate the nature and number of non-target cells and measure the
1210		percentage of cells that have been genetically modified. As you
1218		develop a greater understanding of the cellular phenotypes present
1210		in your product during clinical development, you may also
1220		consider adding impurity tests for specific cell populations in order
1220		to establish greater manufacturing control
1221		to estucitish greater manufacturing control.
1222	4	Control of Drug Substance $(3, 2, 8, 4)$
1223		Control of Drug Substance (3.2.5.1)
1224		a Specification (3.2.8.4.1)
1225		
1220		You should list DS specifications in your original IND submission
1227		Specifications are defined as a list of tests, references to analytical
1220		procedures and appropriate acceptance criteria used to assess quality
1220		Accentance criteria should be established and justified based on data
1230		obtained from lots used in preclinical and/or clinical studies data from lots
1231		used for demonstration of manufacturing consistency, data from stability
1232		studies and relevant development data
1233		studies, and relevant development data.
1235		For products in the early stages of clinical development, very few
1236		specifications are finalized and some tests may still be under
1230		development. However, the testing plan submitted in your NID should be
1237		adequate to describe the physical chemical or biological characteristics of
1230		acequate to describe the physical, enclinear, or biological characteristics of

1240identity, strength (potency), quality, and purity1241(21 CFR 312.23(a)(7)(iv)(a)).1242Your IND should include specifications with established acceptance1244criteria for safety testing at Phase 1. Safety testing includes tests to a	ensure e ng this
1241(21 CFR 312.23(a)(7)(iv)(a)).124212431243Your IND should include specifications with established acceptance1244criteria for safety testing at Phase 1. Safety testing includes tests to a	ensure e ng this
12421243124412441244124512451246124712481249124912491240124012411241124112421243124412441244124512451246124712481249124912491240124112411241124212431244124412441245124512461247124812481249 </td <td>ensure e ng this</td>	ensure e ng this
1243Your IND should include specifications with established acceptance1244criteria for safety testing at Phase 1. Safety testing includes tests to end	ensure e ng this
1244 criteria for safety testing at Phase 1. Safety testing includes tests to e	ensure e ng this unt
	e ng this unt
1245 freedom from extraneous material, adventitious agents, microbial	e ng this unt
1246 contamination, and replication competent virus. Information on som	ng this ınt
1247 common safety test methods is provided in more detail in the follow	this
1248 section (see "Analytical Procedures (3.2.S.4.2)," section V.A.4.b. of	int
1249 guidance). To maximize the sensitivity of safety testing, it is import	
1250 that you perform each test at the stage of production at which	
1251 contamination is most likely to be detected. For example, tests for	
1252 mycoplasma or adventitious viruses (in vivo or in vitro) should be	
1253 performed on cell culture harvest material (cells and supernatant) pri	or to
1254 further processing, e.g., prior to clarification, filtration, purification,	and
inactivation.	
1256	
1257 Your IND should also include specifications for measuring an appro-	oriate
dose level (i.e., strength or potency) at Phase 1. Assays used to deter	mine
dose (e.g., vector genome titer by quantitative polymerase chain read	tion
1260 (qPCR), transducing units, plaque-forming units, transduced cells) sl	ould
1261 be well-qualified prior to initiating dose escalation studies. Informat	ion
1262 on how to qualify your dose determining assay is provided in "Valid	ation
1263 of Analytical Procedures (3.2.S.4.3)" (section V.A.4.c. of this guidar	ce).
1264	,
1265 Additional testing will depend on the type of gene therapy product as	nd the
1266 phase of clinical development. These tests may include assays to ass	ess
1267 product characteristics, such as identity, purity (including endotoxin	and
1268 contaminants, such as residual host cell DNA, bovine serum albumir	L
1269 (BSA), DNase), and potency/strength. For additional information or	L
1270 potency tests, please refer to the FDA's Guidance for Industry "Pote	ıcy
1271 Tests for Cellular and Gene Therapy Products," dated January 2011	Ref.
1272 19).	
1273	
1274 Please note that not all testing listed in this section of the guidance is	
1275 required for release of both the DS and DP. In some cases, repeat te	sting
1276 may be good practice; however, redundant testing may not always be	;
1277 feasible or practical. In this case, we recommend that you provide a	
1278 rationale to support the selection of testing performed for release of a	ither
1279 DS or DP.	
1280	
1281 We provide some additional comments regarding tests for product	
1282 characterization and impurities under "Specifications (3.2.P.5.1)" (see	ction
1283 V.B.5.a. of this guidance).	

1284	
1285	b. Analytical Procedures (3.2.S.4.2)
1286	
1287	You should provide a description of all the analytical procedures used
1288	during manufacturing to assess your manufacturing process and product
1289	quality. In your original IND submission, your descriptions should have
1290	sufficient detail so that we can understand and evaluate the adequacy of
1291	your procedures. We recommend that you develop detailed SOPs for how
1292	your analytical procedures are conducted at early stages of product
1293	development as a part of your quality system. We acknowledge that,
1294	during product development, analytical methods may be modified to
1295	improve control and suitability. However, assay control is necessary
1296	during all phases of clinical development to ensure product quality and
1297	safety and to allow for comparability studies, following manufacturing
1298	changes.
1299	
1300	Documentation submitted in support of your analytical procedures should
1301	describe in detail how a procedure is performed and should specify any
1302	reference standards, equipment, and controls to be used. Submission of
1303	information, such as individual SOPs or batch records, will generally not
1304	be necessary, provided descriptions of your analytical procedures are
1305	sufficiently detailed in your IND. Contractor test reports are acceptable,
1306	provided there is adequate description of the analytical procedure, test
1307	sensitivity, specificity, and controls.
1308	
1309	i. Safety Testing
1310	
1311	Safety testing on the DS should include microbiological testing,
1312	such as bioburden (or sterility, as appropriate), mycoplasma, and
1313	adventitious viral agent testing, to ensure product quality.
1314	Guidelines and/or procedures for many safety tests have been
1315	described in detail, elsewhere (e.g., bioburden, ⁵ sterility, ⁶
1316	mycoplasma (Ref. 20), adventitious agent testing, and tests for
1317	specific pathogens (Ref. 12)). Analytical procedures different than
1318	those outlined in the United States Pharmacopeia (USP), FDA
1319	guidance, or Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) may be
1320	acceptable under IND if you provide adequate information on your
1321	test specificity, sensitivity, and robustness. Examples of

⁵ USP<61> describes membrane filtration, plate count, and most probable number methods that can be done to quantitatively determine the bioburden of non-sterile DPs. Although 21 CFR 211.110(a)(6) does not specify a test method, it requires that bioburden in-process testing be conducted pursuant to written procedures during the manufacturing process of DPs.

⁶ Sterility testing may be performed on the DS when it cannot be performed on the DP, as outlined in the final rule: Amendments to Sterility Test Requirements for Biological Products (May 3, 2012; 77 FR 26162 at 26165). Sterility tests are described in 21 CFR 610.12 and USP<71> Sterility Tests.

1322 1323 1324 1325 1326 1327 1328 1329 1330	alternative methods, which may be needed for live cells, include rapid sterility tests, rapid mycoplasma tests (including PCR-based tests), and rapid endotoxin tests. We recommend that you plan to demonstrate equal or greater assurance of your test methodology, compared to a compendial method, prior to licensure, as required under 21 CFR 610.9. We provide some additional comments regarding these tests under "Specifications (3.2.P.5.1)" (section V.B.5.a. of this guidance) as well as comments regarding replication competent virus and wild-type oncolytic virus testing,
1331	below.
1332	
1333	ii. Replication Competent Virus
1334	
1335	For many gene therapy viral vectors, we recommend specific
1336	testing, due to the potential for these vectors to recombine or revert
1337	to a parental or wild-type (WT) phenotype at a low frequency.
1338	Tests for replication-competent, parental, or wild-type viruses that
1339	may be generated during production (e.g., replication-competent
1340	adenovirus (RCA) and replication-competent retrovirus (RCR))
1341	should be performed on material collected at the appropriate stage
1342	of the manufacturing process. For example, we recommend testing
1343	banked material for the presence of replication-competent viruses
1344	and as a specification for in-process or release testing of DS or DP,
1345	as appropriate (please see further details, below, within this
1346	section).
134/	
1348	A. Replication-Competent Retrovirus (RCR) Testing
1349	
1350	Retroviral-based products (including lentivirus and foamy
1351	virus-based products) used for most gene therapy
1352	applications are designed to be replication defective. To
1555	DCD at multiple points, during anoduction of a retroving
1354	NCK at multiple points, during production of a fettovital
1355	to "Guidance for Industry: Supplemental Guidance on
1350	Testing for Replication Competent Retrovirus in Retrovirul
1357	Vector Based Gene Therapy Products and During Follow
1350	up of Patients in Clinical Trials Using Potroviral Vectors"
1359	dated November 2006 (Ref. 21). This guidance will be
1361	superseded by "Testing of Petroviral Vector Based Human
1362	Gene Therapy Products for Replication Competent
1363	Retrovirus During Product Manufacture and Patient
1364	Follow-up: Draft Guidance for Industry " dated July 2018
1365	(Ref 22) when finalized
1366	(ICI. 22), when infanzed.
1500	

Draft – Not for Implementation

1369The adenoviral-based products used for most gene therapy applications are designed to be replication defective. A notable exception is oncolytic adenoviruses (see "Wild- Type Oncolytic Virus Testing" in section V.A.4.bi.D. of 13731371notable exception is oncolytic adenoviruses (see "Wild- Type Oncolytic Virus Testing" in section between viral vector sequences and viral sequences present in the cell substrate, during manufacturing. Therefore, for most adenoviral-based products, we recommend that you qualify your MVB for RCA and test either the DS or DP of each production lot for RCA. We recommend a maximum level of 1 RCA in 3×10^{10} viral particles.1381C.Replication-Competent AAV (rcAAV) Testing1384Preparations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with helper virus-dependent rcAAV, also referred to as wild- type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV are generated through homologous or non-homologous recombination events between AAV elements present on the vector and AAV rep and cap sequences that are present, during manufacture. While wild-type AAV as no known associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1396Therefore, we recommend that you test for reAAV, which could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus, and report these results. A number of methods have been time appendication of AAV in the presence of helper virus, and report these results. A number of methods have been time appendication of AAV in the presence of helper virus, followed by PCR for rep and cap sequences, following DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a specific method for determ	1367	<i>B.</i> Replication-Competent Adenovirus (RCA) Testing
1369The adenoviral-based products used for most gene therapy applications are designed to be replication defective. A notable exception is oncolytic adenoviruses (see "Wild- Type Oncolytic Virus Testing" in section V.A.4.b.i.D. of this guidance). RCA may be generated at a low frequency as a result of homologous recombination between viral vector sequences and viral sequences present in the cell substrate, during manufacturing. Therefore, for most adenoviral-based products, we recommend that you qualify your MVB for RCA and test either the DS or DP of each production lot for RCA. We recommend a maximum level of 1 RCA in 3×10 ¹⁰ viral particles.1381C.Replication-Competent AAV (reAAV) Testing 13881382C.Replication-Competent AAV (reAAV) Testing 13881384Preparations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with helper virus-dependent reAAV, also referred to as wild- type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV. These reCAAV are generated through homologous or non-homologous sasciated pathology and cannot replicate without helper virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can trus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1391Therefore, we recommend that you test for reAAV, including amilification of AAV in the presence of helper virus, followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR) junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a specific method for determining reAAV in this guidance. You should describe your test method and assay sensitivity in the IND.	1368	
1370applications are designed to be replication defective. A1371notable exception is oncolytic adenoviruses (see "Wild-1372Type Oncolytic Virus Testing" in section V.A.4.b.ii.D. of1373this guidance). RCA may be generated at a low frequency1374as a result of homologous recombination between viral1375vector sequences and viral sequences present in the cell1376substrate, during manufacturing. Therefore, for most1377adenoviral-based products, we recommend that you qualify1378your MVB for RCA and test either the DS or DP of each1379production lot for RCA. We recommend a maximum level1380of 1 RCA in 3×10 ¹⁰ viral particles.1381I1382C. Replication-Competent AAV (reAAV) Testing1384Preparations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with1385helper virus-dependent reAAV, also referred to as wild-1386type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV. These reAAV are1387generated through homologous or non-homologous1388recombination events between AAV elements present on1390during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known1391associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper1392virus, expression of cap or reg genes in infected cells can1393result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce1394effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1395reference we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which1396Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which <t< td=""><td>1369</td><td>The adenoviral-based products used for most gene therapy</td></t<>	1369	The adenoviral-based products used for most gene therapy
1371notable exception is oncolytic adenoviruses (see "Wild- Type Oncolytic Virus Testing" in section V. A.4.b.ii.D. of this guidance). RCA may be generated at a low frequency as a result of homologous recombination between viral vector sequences and viral sequences present in the cell substrate, during manufacturing. Therefore, for most adenoviral-based products, we recommend that you qualify your MVB for RCA and test either the DS or DP of each production lot for RCA. We recommend a maximum level of 1 RCA in 3×10^{10} viral particles.1381C.Replication-Competent AAV (reAAV) Testing1383Preparations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with helper virus-dependent reAAV, also referred to as wild- type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV. These recAAV are generated through homologous or non-homologous recombination events between AAV clements present of during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can trye. we recommend that you test for reAAV, which can reduce effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1390Therefore, we recommend that you test for reAAV, which can reduce effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1391followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR) junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a specific method for determining reAAV in this guidance. You should describe your test method and assay sensitivity in the IND.	1370	applications are designed to be replication defective. A
1372Type Oncolytic Virus Testing" in section V.A.4.b.ii.D. of this guidance). RCA may be generated at a low frequency as a result of homologous recombination between viral vector sequences and viral sequences present in the cell substrate, during manufacturing. Therefore, for most adenoviral-based products, we recommend that you qualify your MVB for RCA and test either the DS or DP of each production lot for RCA. We recommend a maximum level of 1 RCA in 3×10 ¹⁰ viral particles.1381C.Replication-Competent AAV (reAAV) Testing1382C.Replication-Competent AAV (reAAV) Testing1384Preparations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with helper virus-dependent reAAV, also referred to as wild- type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV. These reAAV are generated through homologous or non-homologous recombination events between AAV elements present on the vector and AAV rep and cap sequences that are present, during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1393Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus, followed by PCR for rep.inverted terminal repeats (ITR) junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following DNase digestion of the vector represent, following DNase digestion of the vector represent, following DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in the virus, expression of cap sequences, following DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in this gu	1371	notable exception is oncolytic adenoviruses (see "Wild-
1373this guidance). RCA may be generated at a low frequency as a result of homologous recombination between viral vector sequences and viral sequences present in the cell substrate, during manufacturing. Therefore, for most adenoviral-based products, we recommend that you qualify your MVB for RCA and test either the DS or DP of each production lot for RCA. We recommend a maximum level of 1 RCA in 3×10 ¹⁰ viral particles.1380of 1 RCA in 3×10 ¹⁰ viral particles.1381C.1382C.1384Preparations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with helper virus-dependent reAAV, also referred to as wild- type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV. These reAAV are generated through homologous or non-homologous1389recombination events between AAV elements present on the vector and AAV rep and cap sequences that are present, during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1396Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus, followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR) junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in thus during manufacturing the lovel of rcAAV, including amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus, followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR) junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in t	1372	Type Oncolytic Virus Testing" in section V.A.4.b.ii.D. of
1374as a result of homologous recombination between viral vector sequences and viral sequences present in the cell substrate, during manufacturing. Therefore, for most adenoviral-based products, we recommend that you qualify your MVB for RCA and test either the DS or DP of each production lot for RCA. We recommend a maximum level of 1 RCA in 3×10 ¹⁰ viral particles.1381C. Replication-Competent AAV (reAAV) Testing1382C. Replication-Competent AAV (reAAV) Testing1384Preparations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with helper virus-dependent reAAV, also referred to as wild- type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV. These reAAV are generated through homologous or non-homologous recombination events between AAV elements present on the vector and AAV rep and cap sequences that are present, during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1396Therefore, we recommend that you test for reAAV, which could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus, followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR) junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a specific method for determining reAAV in thus during manufacture. You should describe your test method and assay sensitivity in the IND.	1373	this guidance). RCA may be generated at a low frequency
1375vector sequences and viral sequences present in the cell substrate, during manufacturing. Therefore, for most adenoviral-based products, we recommend that you qualify your MVB for RCA and test either the DS or DP of each production lot for RCA. We recommend a maximum level of 1 RCA in 3×10 ¹⁰ viral particles.13800138111382C. Replication-Competent AAV (rcAAV) Testing 13831384Preparations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with helper virus-dependent rcAAV, also referred to as wild- type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV. These rcAAV are generated through homologous or non-homologous recombination events between AAV elements present on the vector and AAV rep and cap sequences that are present, during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1395Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus, followed by PCR for rep./inerted terminal repeats (ITR) junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following 13901401followed by PCR for rep and cap sequences, following ing amplification of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a maximus defined and assistivity in the IND.	1374	as a result of homologous recombination between viral
1376substrate, during manufacturing. Therefore, for most adenoviral-based products, we recommend that you qualify your MVB for RCA and test either the DS or DP of each production lot for RCA. We recommend a maximum level of 1 RCA in 3×10 ¹⁰ viral particles.1380of 1 RCA in 3×10 ¹⁰ viral particles.1381	1375	vector sequences and viral sequences present in the cell
1377adenoviral-based products, we recommend that you qualify your MVB for RCA and test either the DS or DP of each production lot for RCA. We recommend a maximum level of 1 RCA in 3×10 ¹⁰ viral particles.1380of 1 RCA in 3×10 ¹⁰ viral particles.1381C. Replication-Competent AAV (rcAAV) Testing1383Preparations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with helper virus-dependent rcAAV, also referred to as wild- type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV. These rcAAV are generated through homologous or non-homologous recombination events between AAV elements present on during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper virus, expression of cap or reg genes in infected cells can 1393 result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1396Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which and report these results. A number of methods have been published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus, for weak of the vector represent of these results. A number of methods have been published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus, for weak of the vector represent of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in this guidance. You should describe your test method and assay sensitivity in the IND.	1376	substrate, during manufacturing. Therefore, for most
1378your MVB for RCA and test either the DS or DP of each production lot for RCA. We recommend a maximum level of 1 RCA in 3×10 ¹⁰ viral particles.1380of 1 RCA in 3×10 ¹⁰ viral particles.1381I1382C. Replication-Competent AAV (rcAAV) Testing1383Preparations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with helper virus-dependent rcAAV, also referred to as wild- type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV. These rcAAV are generated through homologous or non-homologous recombination events between AAV elements present on the vector and AAV rep and cap sequences that are present, during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1395Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus, followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR) junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in this guidance. You should describe your test method and assay sensitivity in the IND.	1377	adenoviral-based products, we recommend that you qualify
1379production lot for RCA. We recommend a maximum level of 1 RCA in 3×10 ¹⁰ viral particles.138113821382C. Replication-Comptent AAV (rcAAV) Testing1383Preparations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with helper virus-dependent rcAAV, also referred to as wild- type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV. These rcAAV are generated through homologous or non-homologous recombination events between AAV elements present on the vector and AAV rep and cap sequences that are present, during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1395Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus, and report these results. A number of methods have been published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus, followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR) junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in this guidance. You should describe your test method and assay sensitivity in the IND.	1378	your MVB for RCA and test either the DS or DP of each
1380of 1 RCA in 3×10^{10} viral particles.138113821382C. Replication-Competent AAV (rcAAV) Testing138313841384Preparations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with helper virus-dependent rcAAV, also referred to as wild- type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV. These rcAAV are generated through homologous or non-homologous recombination events between AAV elements present on during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known associated pathology and canot replicate without helper virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1396Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus, and report these results. A number of methods have been published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus, followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR) junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in this guidance. You should describe your test method and assay sensitivity in the IND.	1379	production lot for RCA. We recommend a maximum level
1381C.Replication-Competent AAV (rcAAV) Testing1382C.Replication-Competent AAV (rcAAV) Testing1383Preparations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with1385helper virus-dependent rcAAV, also referred to as wild-1386type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV. These rcAAV are1387generated through homologous or non-homologous1388recombination events between AAV elements present on1389the vector and AAV rep and cap sequences that are present,1390during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known1391associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper1392virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can1393result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce1394effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1395Interfore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which1397could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus,1398and report these results. A number of methods have been1399published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including1401followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1407assay sensitivity in the IND.	1380	of 1 RCA in 3×10^{10} viral particles.
1382C.Replication-Competent AAV (rcAAV) Testing13831384Preparations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with1385helper virus-dependent rcAAV, also referred to as wild-1386type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV. These rcAAV are1387generated through homologous or non-homologous1388recombination events between AAV elements present on1389the vector and AAV rep and cap sequences that are present,1390during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known1391associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper1392virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can1393result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce1394effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.139511396Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which1397could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus,1398and report these results. A number of methods have been1399published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including1401followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1406assay sensitivity in the IND.	1381	The second s
13831384Preparations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with helper virus-dependent rcAAV, also referred to as wild- type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV. These rcAAV are generated through homologous or non-homologous recombination events between AAV elements present on the vector and AAV rep and cap sequences that are present, during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1395Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus, and report these results. A number of methods have been published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus, followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR) junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in this guidance. You should describe your test method and assay sensitivity in the IND.	1382	C Replication-Competent AAV (rcAAV) Testing
1384Preparations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with1385helper virus-dependent rcAAV, also referred to as wild-1386type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV. These rcAAV are1387generated through homologous or non-homologous1388recombination events between AAV elements present on1390the vector and AAV rep and cap sequences that are present,1391during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known1392virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can1393result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce1394effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.139511396Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which1397could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus,1398and report these results. A number of methods have been1399published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including1400amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus,1401followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1406assay sensitivity in the IND.1407this guidance. You should describe your test method and	1383	c. Replication competent in (formall) results
1385Interpretations of the vector scale between the vector and the vector and AAV are generated through homologous or non-homologous1386type AAV or pseudo wild-type AAV. These reAAV are generated through homologous or non-homologous1387generated through homologous or non-homologous1388recombination events between AAV elements present on the vector and AAV rep and cap sequences that are present, during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1396Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus, and report these results. A number of methods have been published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus, followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR) junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in this guidance. You should describe your test method and assay sensitivity in the IND.1407	1384	Prenarations of AAV vectors can be contaminated with
1386Interpret vitus dependent interpret vitus dependent vitus depen	1385	helper virus-dependent rcAAV also referred to as wild-
1380Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which1390call potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus,1390and report these results. A number of methods have been1391published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, which1392call potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus,1396and report these results. A number of methods have been1397published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, which1398and report these results. A number of methods have been1399published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including1391amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus,1398followed by PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1400published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including1401followed by PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1406assay sensitivity in the IND.	1386	type $\Delta \Delta V$ or pseudo wild-type $\Delta \Delta V$. These rc $\Delta \Delta V$ are
1367generated through homologous of homologous1388recombination events between AAV elements present on1389the vector and AAV rep and cap sequences that are present,1390during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known1391associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper1392virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can1393result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce1394effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.139513961396Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which1397could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus,1398and report these results. A number of methods have been1399published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including1400amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus,1401followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1406assay sensitivity in the IND.	1387	generated through homologous or non homologous
1389Teconioniation events between AAV elements present on1389the vector and AAV rep and cap sequences that are present,1390during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known1391associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper1392virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can1393result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce1394effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1395Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which1397could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus,1398and report these results. A number of methods have been1399published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including1400amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus,1401followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1406assay sensitivity in the IND.	1307	recombination events between AAV elements present on
1339Intervector and AAV rep and cap sequences that are present,1390during manufacture. While wild-type AAV has no known1391associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper1392virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can1393result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce1394effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1395Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which1397could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus,1398and report these results. A number of methods have been1399published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including1400amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus,1401followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1406assay sensitivity in the IND.	1300	the vector and AAV ran and can acquences that are present of
1390during manufacture. While while-type AAV has no known1391associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper1392virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can1393result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce1394effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1395Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which1397could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus,1398and report these results. A number of methods have been1399published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including1400amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus,1401followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1406recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1407this guidance. You should describe your test method and1407assay sensitivity in the IND.	1200	the vector and AAV rep and cap sequences that are present,
1391associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper1392virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can1393result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce1394effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1395Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which1397could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus,1398and report these results. A number of methods have been1399published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including1400amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus,1401followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1406assay sensitivity in the IND.	1390	during manufacture. while wild-type AAV has no known
1392Virus, expression of cap of rep genes in infected cells can1393result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce1394effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.1395Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which1397could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus,1398and report these results. A number of methods have been1399published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including1400amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus,1401followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1406assay sensitivity in the IND.	1391	associated pathology and cannot replicate without helper
1393result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce1394effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.139513961396Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which1397could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus,1398and report these results. A number of methods have been1399published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including1400amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus,1401followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1406assay sensitivity in the IND.	1392	virus, expression of cap or rep genes in infected cells can
1394effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.139513961396Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus, and report these results. A number of methods have been published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus, followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR) junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in this guidance. You should describe your test method and assay sensitivity in the IND.	1393	result in unintended immune responses, which can reduce
13951396Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which1397could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus,1398and report these results. A number of methods have been1399published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including1400amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus,1401followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1406assay sensitivity in the IND.	1394	effectiveness and may have unintended safety risks.
1396Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which1397could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus,1398and report these results. A number of methods have been1399published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including1400amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus,1401followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1406assay sensitivity in the IND.	1395	
1397could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus,1398and report these results. A number of methods have been1399published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including1400amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus,1401followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1406assay sensitivity in the IND.	1396	Therefore, we recommend that you test for rcAAV, which
1398and report these results. A number of methods have been1399published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including1400amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus,1401followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1406assay sensitivity in the IND.	1397	could potentially replicate in the presence of helper virus,
1399published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus, followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR) junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in this guidance. You should describe your test method and assay sensitivity in the IND.1407	1398	and report these results. A number of methods have been
1400amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus,1401followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1406assay sensitivity in the IND.14071407	1399	published for evaluating the level of rcAAV, including
1401followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1406assay sensitivity in the IND.1407	1400	amplification of AAV in the presence of helper virus,
1402junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1406assay sensitivity in the IND.14071407	1401	followed by PCR for rep/inverted terminal repeats (ITR)
1403DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1406assay sensitivity in the IND.14071407	1402	junctions, and PCR for rep and cap sequences, following
1404recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and1406assay sensitivity in the IND.14071407	1403	DNase digestion of the vector preparation. We do not
1405this guidance. You should describe your test method and assay sensitivity in the IND.1407	1404	recommend a specific method for determining rcAAV in
1406 assay sensitivity in the IND. 1407	1405	this guidance. You should describe your test method and
1407	1406	assay sensitivity in the IND.
	1407	
1408	1408	
1409	1409	
1410	1410	

1412	D. Wild-Type Oncolytic Virus Testing
1413	
1414	Most oncolytic viruses used in gene therapy applications
1415	not only carry transgenes but also have been attenuated or
1416	adapted from a parental virus strain to grow selectively in
1417	cancer cells. It may be possible for these attenuated or
1418	adapted viruses to either recombine or revert to a parental
1419	(or WT) genotype, during manufacture. Therefore, we
1420	recommend that you conduct tests to determine whether the
1421	parental virus sequences are present in your product. In
1422	addition, we recommend that you select production cells
1423	that do not contain viral sequences that may allow
1424	homologous recombination with the product. For example,
1425	we do not recommend 293 cell substrates for the
1426	manufacture of F1-modified oncolvtic adenoviruses due to
1427	the potential for homologous recombination with F1
1427	sequences in the 293 cells
1429	sequences in the 295 cens.
1430	c Validation of Analytical Procedures (3.2.5.4.3)
1430	e. Validation of Analytical Trocedures (5.2.5.4.5)
1/32	Validation of analytical procedures is usually not required for original
1/33	ND submissions for Phase 1 studies: however, you should demonstrate
1/3/	that test methods are appropriately controlled. In general, scientifically
1434	sound principles for assay performance should be applied (i.e., tests
1433	sound principles for assay performance should be applied (i.e., tests
1430	should be specific, sensitive, and reproducible and include appropriate
1437	when appropriate and qualify sofety related tests prior to initiation of
1430	when appropriate and quarry safety-related tests prior to initiation of
1439	chinical unais.
1440	To any property of some the many meduate you should also qualify the
1441	To ensure safety of gene therapy products, you should also qualify the
1442	transducing units, plague forming units) prior to initiating daga appoint
1445	transducing units, plaque forming units) prior to initiating dose escalation
1444	studies. In your original IND submission, you should provide a detailed
1445	description of the qualification protocol (e.g., samples; standards;
1440	positive/negative controls; reference lots; and controls evaluated, such as
144/	operators, reagents, equipment, dates) and data supporting the accuracy,
1448	reproducibility, sensitivity, and specificity of the method. Also critical to
1449	ensuring safety is the ability to compare the dose used for preclinical
1450	evaluations to the dose to be used for clinical studies. One way to ensure
1451	that the doses compare is to use the same qualified method to quantitate
1452	preclinical and clinical lots. If it is not possible to use the same qualified
1453	method, we recommend that you retain sufficient quantities of preclinical
1454	material to enable side by side testing with the clinical material, using the
1455	

Draft – Not for Implementation

same qualified method. In addition, you should validate tests used to determine dose prior to initiating clinical studies to demonstrate efficacy or support licensure.

Assays used to measure RCR and RCA should also meet our current recommendations for sensitivity at an early stage of development (see descriptions "RCR Testing" and "RCA Testing" (section V.A.4.b.ii.*A.* and *B.* of this guidance). We recommend that you include relevant positive and negative controls when conducting these tests and include positive controls spiked in the test article to assess whether there are any inhibitory effects of the test article on detection.

For all analytical procedures, we recommend that you evaluate assay performance throughout product development, have a validation plan in place during later phase clinical studies, and complete validation before BLA submission. For more information on validation of analytical methods, please see the FDA's Guidance for Industry: "Q2B Validation of Analytical Procedures: Methodology," dated November 1996 (Ref. 23).

d. Batch Analysis (3.2.S.4.4)

You should include a table with test results for all of the batches (or lots) of DS that you have manufactured. For early stage INDs, this may include only toxicology lots or developmental batches and a single manufacturing run for clinical grade material. Please note that batches manufactured in different ways should be clearly identified in the submission. We recommend that you annually update this section of your IND as new batches are produced. You should indicate any batches that fail to meet release specifications and any action taken to investigate the failure (as outlined in "Process Validation and/or Evaluation (3.2.S.2.5)" (section V.A.2.e. of this guidance). We recommend that you retain samples of all production lots for use in future assay development, validation, or comparability studies.

e. Justification of Specification (3.2.S.4.5)

You should provide justification for the DS specifications in your IND. We recognize that acceptance criteria may be adjusted throughout the product development stages, based on both manufacturing and clinical experience. For early stage clinical studies, production lots may be more variable than those used in later phase investigations.
1501 1502 1503 1504	For later stage investigational studies in which the primary objective is to gather meaningful data about product efficacy, we recommend that acceptance criteria be tightened to ensure batches are well-defined and consistently manufactured.
1506 1507	5. Reference Standards or Materials (3.2.S.5)
1508	You should provide information on the reference standards or reference materials
1509	used for testing the DS in your original IND submission. We recommend that
1510	you provide the source and lot number: expiration date: certificates of analyses
1511	when available: and/or internally or externally generated evidence of identity and
1512	purity for each reference standard.
1513	
1514	Three types of reference standards are generally used: 1) certified reference
1515	standards (e.g., USP compendial standards): 2) commercially supplied reference
1516	standards obtained from a reputable commercial source; and/or 3) other materials
1517	of documented purity, custom-synthesized by an analytical laboratory or other
1518	noncommercial establishment. In some cases, the reference material for an assay
1519	will be a well-characterized lot of the gene therapy product, itself. In this case,
1520	we recommend that you reserve and maintain a sufficient amount of material
1521	(e.g., part of a production lot) to serve as a reference material.
1522	
1523	6. Container Closure System (3.2.S.6)
1524	
1525	You should describe the type(s) of container and closure used for the DS in your
1526	original IND submission, including the identity of materials used in the
1527	construction of the container closure system. We recommend that you determine
1528	whether the containers and closures are compatible with the DS. For an original
1529	IND submission, compatibility with a gene therapy product may be evaluated
1530	during stability studies or may be based on historical data and experience, using
1531	similar products. You should indicate whether the container is an approved or
1532	cleared device and/or the information is cross-referenced to a master file, as
1533	described in section III. "Administrative Information" of this guidance.
1534	
1535	7. Stability (3.2.S.7)
1536	
1537	a. Stability Summary and Conclusions (3.2.S.7.1)
1538	
1539	We recommend that you describe in your original IND submission the
1540	types of stability studies (either conducted or planned) to demonstrate that
1541	the DS is within acceptable limits. The protocol should describe the
1542	storage container, formulation, storage conditions, testing frequency, and
1543	specifications (i.e., test methodologies and acceptance criteria). Please
1544	

Draft – Not for Implementation

note that stability studies may evolve with product development, and if DS is immediately processed into DP, long term DS stability data may not be needed.

Your stability analysis may include measures of product sterility (or container integrity), identity, purity, quality, and activity or potency. We recommend that you provide justification for the test methods and acceptance criteria used in the stability analysis. It is often helpful to demonstrate that at least one or more of the test methods in your stability analysis are stability-indicating. You may demonstrate a test is stabilityindicating, using forced degradation studies, accelerated stability studies, or another type of experimental system that demonstrates product deterioration. Information to help you design your stability studies may be found in the following guidance documents: FDA "Guideline for Industry: Quality of Biotechnological Products: Stability Testing of Biotechnological/Biological Products," dated July 1996 (Ref. 24); FDA "Guidance for Industry: Q1A(R2) Stability Testing of New Drug Substances and Products," dated November 2003 (Ref. 25); and FDA "Guidance for Industry: Q1E Evaluation of Stability Data," dated June 2004 (Ref. 26).

b. Post-Approval Stability Protocol and Stability Commitment (3.2.S.7.2)

We do not recommend that you provide a post-approval stability protocol and stability commitment in the IND. However, as you progress with product development, you may want to consider which stability studies would be required to determine an expiry date for the approved product or to support post-approval changes to expiry. We recommend the discussion of these items at your late phase IND meetings.

c. Stability Data (3.2.S.7.3)

We recommend that you provide the results of your stability studies in your IND and update this information on a regular basis (e.g., annual reports). Information on the qualification of analytical procedures used to generate stability data should be included in your original IND submission.

B. Drug Product (3.2.P)

1545

1546

1547

1548 1549

1550 1551

1552

1553

1554

1555

1556

1557

1558

1559

1560 1561

1562

1563 1564

1565 1566

1567

1568 1569

1570

1571 1572

1573

1574

1575 1576

1577 1578

1579

1580

1581

1582

1583 1584

1. Drug Product Description and Composition (3.2.P.1)
You should provide a description of the DP and its composition (21 CFR
312.23(a)(7)(iv)(b)). This includes a description of the dosage form and a list of

1591 function, and a reference to quality standards for each component (e.g., 1592 compendial monograph or manufacturers' specifications). If a drug or device will 1593 be used with your gene therapy as a combination product, we recommend that 1594 quality information for the drug or device be included in section 3.2.P of the CTD 1595 with appropriate hyperlinks to section 3.2.R of the CTD, as described in the FDA 1596 "eCTD Technical Conformance Guide: Technical Specifications Document," 1597 dated November 2017 (Ref. 4). If a placebo treatment is used in the clinical trial, 1598 a separate DP section should be provided for the placebo. In addition, you should 1600 description of any accompanying reconstitution diluents and a 1601 accompanying reconstitution diluent in a separate DP section, if applicable. 1602 2. Pharmaceutical Development (3.2.P.2) 1604 the velopment studies conducted to establish that product formulation, 1605 The Pharmaceutical Development contine control tests conducted, 1608 instructions for use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The 1609 studies described here are distinguished from routine control tests conducted, 1610 according to specifications. Additionally, this section should iden	1590	all of its com	ponents (active and inactive), the amount on a per unit basis, the
1592 compendial monograph or manufacturers' specifications). If a drug or device will 1593 be used with your gene therapy as a combination product, we recommend that 1594 quality information for the drug or device be included in section 3.2.P of the CTD 1595 with appropriate hyperlinks to section 3.2.R of the CTD, as described in the FDA 1596 "eCTD Technical Conformance Guide: Technical Specifications Document," 1597 dated November 2017 (Ref. 4). If a placebo treatment is used in the clinical trial, 1598 a separate DP section should be provided for the placebo. In addition, you should 1599 provide a description of any accompanying reconstitution diluents and a 1600 description of the container and closure used for the dosage form and 1601 accompanying reconstitution diluent in a separate DP section, if applicable. 1602 . Pharmaccutical Development (3.2.P.2) 1604 . The Pharmaccutical Development section should contain information on the 1606 development studies conducted to establish that product formulation, 1607 manufacturing process, containcr closure system, microbiological attributes, and 1610 according to specifications. Additionally, this section should dientify and 1621 influence batch reproducibility, produc	1591	function, and	a reference to quality standards for each component (e.g.,
1593 be used with your gene therapy as a combination product, we recommend that 1594 quality information for the drug or device be included in section 3.2.P of the CTD 1595 with appropriate hyperlinks to section 3.2.R of the CTD, as described in the FDA 1596 "eCTD Technical Conformance Guide: Technical Specifications Document," 1597 dated November 2017 (Ref. 4). If a placebo treatment is used in the clinical trial, 1598 a separate DP section should be provided for the placebo. In addition, you should 1599 provide a description of any accompanying reconstitution diluents and a 1600 description of the container and closure used for the dosage form and 1601 accompanying reconstitution diluent in a separate DP section, if applicable. 1602 2. Pharmaceutical Development (3.2.P.2) 1604 The Pharmaceutical Development (3.2.P.2) 1605 The Pharmaceutical Development section should contain information on the 1606 development studies conducted to establish that product formulation, 1608 instructions for use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The 1609 studies described here are distinguished from routine control tests conducted, 1610 according to specifications. Additionally, this section should identify and	1592	compendial n	nonograph or manufacturers' specifications). If a drug or device will
1594 quality information for the drug or device be included in section 3.2.P of the CTD 1595 with appropriate hyperlinks to section 3.2.R of the CTD, as described in the FDA 1596 "eCTD Technical Conformance Guide: Technical Specifications Document," 1597 dated November 2017 (Ref. 4). If a placebo treatment is used in the clinical trial, 1598 a separate DP section should be provided for the placebo. In addition, you should 1599 provide a description of any accompanying reconstitution diluents and a 1600 description of the container and closure used for the dosage form and 1601 accompanying reconstitution diluent in a separate DP section, if applicable. 1602 1603 2. Pharmaceutical Development (3.2.P.2) 1604 1605 The Pharmaceutical Development section should contain information on the 1606 development studies conducted to establish that product formulation, 1607 manufacturing process, container closure system, microbiological attributes, and 1608 instructions for use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The 1609 studies described here are distinguished from routine control tests conducted, 1611 describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can 1612 influence batch reproduc	1593	be used with	your gene therapy as a combination product, we recommend that
1595 with appropriate hyperlinks to section 3.2.R of the CTD, as described in the FDA 1596 "eCTD Technical Conformance Guide: Technical Specifications Document," 1597 dated November 2017 (Ref 4). If a placebo treatment is used in the clinical trial, 1598 a separate DP section should be provided for the placebo. In addition, you should 1599 provide a description of any accompanying reconstitution diluents and a 1600 description of the container and closure used for the dosage form and 1601 accompanying reconstitution diluent in a separate DP section, if applicable. 1602 1000 1603 2. Pharmaceutical Development (3.2.P.2) 1604 The Pharmaceutical Development section should contain information on the 1606 development studies conducted to establish that product formulation, 1607 manufacturing process, container closure system, microbiological attributes, and 1608 instructions for us are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The 1609 studies described here are distinguished from routine control tests conducted, 1610 according to specifications. Additionally, this section should identify and 1611 describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can 1612 influence batc	1594	quality inforn	nation for the drug or device be included in section 3.2.P of the CTD
1596 "cCTD Technical Conformance Guide: Technical Specifications Document," 1597 dated November 2017 (Ref. 4). If a placebo treatment is used in the clinical trial, 1598 a separate DP section should be provided for the placebo. In addition, you should 1599 provide a description of any accompanying reconstitution diluents and a 1600 description of the container and closure used for the dosage form and 1601 accompanying reconstitution diluent in a separate DP section, if applicable. 1602 1603 1603 2. Pharmaccutical Development (3.2.P.2) 1604 1605 1605 The Pharmaccutical Development section should contain information on the 1606 development studies conducted to establish that product formulation, 1607 manufacturing process, container closure system, microbiological attributes, and 1608 instructions for use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The 1609 studies described here are distinguished from routine control tests conducted, 1610 according to specifications. Additionally, this section should identify and 1611 describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can 1612 influence batch reproducibility, product performance, and DP quality. Supportive	1595	with appropri	ate hyperlinks to section 3.2.R of the CTD, as described in the FDA
1597 dated November 2017 (Ref. 4). If a placebo treatment is used in the clinical trial, 1598 a separate DP section should be provided for the placebo. In addition, you should 1599 provide a description of any accompanying reconstitution diluents and a 1600 description of the container and closure used for the dosage form and 1601 accompanying reconstitution diluent in a separate DP section, if applicable. 1602 2. 1604 The Pharmaceutical Development (3.2.P.2) 1604 manufacturing process, container closure system, microbiological attributes, and 1608 instructions for use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The 1609 specifications. Additionally, this section should dentify and 1611 describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can 1612 influence batch reproducibility, product performance, and DP quality. Supportive 1613 data and results from specific studies or published literature can be included 1614 within or attached to the Pharmaceutical Development section. Additional 1615 supportive data can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of 1618 a. Components of the Drug Product (3.2.P.2.1) 1619 i. Dr	1596	"eCTD Techr	nical Conformance Guide: Technical Specifications Document,"
1598 a separate DP section should be provided for the placebo. In addition, you should 1599 provide a description of any accompanying reconstitution diluents and a 1600 description of the container and closure used for the dosage form and 1601 accompanying reconstitution diluent in a separate DP section, if applicable. 1602 2. Pharmaceutical Development (3.2.P.2) 1604 1605 The Pharmaceutical Development section should contain information on the 1606 development studies conducted to establish that product formulation, manufacturing process, container closure system, microbiological attributes, and 1608 instructions for use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The 1609 studies described here are distinguished from routine control tests conducted, 1610 according to specifications. Additionally, this section should identify and 1611 describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can 1612 influence batch reproducibility, product performance, and DP quality. Supportive 1613 data and results from specific studies or published literature can be included 1614 within or attached to the Pharmaceutical Development section. Additional 1615 supportive data can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of	1597	dated Novem	ber 2017 (Ref. 4). If a placebo treatment is used in the clinical trial.
1599 provide a description of any accompanying reconstitution diluents and a description of the container and closure used for the dosage form and accompanying reconstitution diluent in a separate DP section, if applicable. 1601 accompanying reconstitution diluent in a separate DP section, if applicable. 1602 2. Pharmaceutical Development (3.2.P.2) 1604 1605 The Pharmaceutical Development section should contain information on the development studies conducted to establish that product formulation, manufacturing process, container closure system, microbiological attributes, and instructions for use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The studies describe the rear edistinguished from routine control tests conducted, according to specifications. Additionally, this section should identify and describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can influence batch reproducibility, product performance, and DP quality. Supportive data and results from specific studies or published literature can be included within or attached to the Pharmaceutical Development section. Additional supportive data can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of the application. 1617 a. Components of the Drug Product (3.2.P.2.1) 1629 i. Drug Substance (3.2.P.2.1) 1631 components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral infectivity) that can influence the performance of the DP. 1620 You should d	1598	a separate DP	section should be provided for the placebo. In addition, you should
1600 description of the container and closure used for the dosage form and 1601 accompanying reconstitution diluent in a separate DP section, if applicable. 1602 2. 1604 The Pharmaceutical Development (3.2.P.2) 1605 The Pharmaceutical Development section should contain information on the 1606 development studies conducted to establish that product formulation, 1607 manufacturing process, container closure system, microbiological attributes, and 1608 instructions for use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The 1609 studies described here are distinguished from routine control tests conducted, 1610 according to specifications. Additionally, this section should identify and 1611 describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can 1612 influence batch reproducibility, product performance, and DP quality. Supportive 1613 data and results from specific studies or published literature can be included 1614 within or attached to the Pharmaceutical Development section. Additional 1615 supportive data can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of 1616 the application. 1617 a. Components of the Drug Product (3.2.P.2.1)	1599	provide a des	cription of any accompanying reconstitution diluents and a
1601 accompanying reconstitution diluent in a separate DP section, if applicable. 1602 2. Pharmaceutical Development (3.2.P.2) 1604 The Pharmaceutical Development section should contain information on the development studies conducted to establish that product formulation, manufacturing process, container closure system, microbiological attributes, and instructions for use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The studies described here are distinguished from routine control tests conducted, according to specifications. Additionally, this section should identify and describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can influence batch reproducibility, product performance, and DP quality. Supportive data and results from specific studies or published literature can be included within or attached to the Pharmaceutical Development section. Additional supportive data can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of the application. 1617 a. Components of the Drug Product (3.2.P.2.1) 1620 i. Drug Substance (3.2.P.2.1.1) 1621 You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral infectivity) that can influence the performance of the DP. 1623 ii. Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2) 1634 ii. Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2) 1642 You should describe in your original IND submissio	1600	description of	f the container and closure used for the dosage form and
1602 2. Pharmaceutical Development (3.2.P.2) 1603 2. Pharmaceutical Development section should contain information on the 1605 The Pharmaceutical Development section should contain information on the 1606 development studies conducted to establish that product formulation, 1607 manufacturing process, container closure system, microbiological attributes, and 1608 instructions for use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The 1609 studies described here are distinguished from routine control tests conducted, 1610 according to specifications. Additionally, this section should identify and 1611 describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can 1612 influence batch reproducibility, product performance, and DP quality. Supportive 1613 data and results from specific studies or published literature can be included 1614 within or attached to the Pharmaceutical Development section. Additional 1615 supportive data can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of 1616 the application. 1617 a. Components of the Drug Product (3.2.P.2.1) 1618 a. Components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug 1620 i. Drug Substance (3.2.P.2.1.1) <td>1601</td> <td>accompanyin</td> <td>g reconstitution diluent in a separate DP section, if applicable.</td>	1601	accompanyin	g reconstitution diluent in a separate DP section, if applicable.
1603 2. Pharmaceutical Development (3.2.P.2) 1604 1605 1605 The Pharmaceutical Development section should contain information on the 1606 development studies conducted to establish that product formulation, 1607 manufacturing process, container closure system, microbiological attributes, and 1608 instructions for use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The 1609 studies described here are distinguished from routine control tests conducted, 1610 according to specifications. Additionally, this section should identify and 1611 describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can 1612 influence batch reproducibility, product performance, and DP quality. Supportive 1614 within or attached to the Pharmaceutical Development section. Additional 1615 supportive data can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of 1616 the application. 1617 a. Components of the Drug Product (3.2.P.2.1) 1618 a. Components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug 1620 i. Drug Substance (3.2.P.2.1.1) 1621 You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the 1622 of the DS (e.g., concentration, viabil	1602		
1604 The Pharmaceutical Development section should contain information on the 1605 The Pharmaceutical Development section should contain information on the 1606 development studies conducted to establish that product formulation, 1607 manufacturing process, container closure system, microbiological attributes, and 1608 instructions for use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The 1609 studies described here are distinguished from routine control tests conducted, 1610 according to specifications. Additionally, this section should identify and 1611 describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can 1612 influence batch reproducibility, product performance, and DP quality. Supportive 1613 data and results from specific studies or published literature can be included 1614 within or attached to the Pharmaceutical Development section. Additional 1615 supportive data can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of 1616 the application. 1617 a. Components of the Drug Product (3.2.P.2.1) 1620 i. Drug Substance (3.2.P.2.1.1) 1621 You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the 1622 You should describe	1603	2. Pharm	naceutical Development (3.2.P.2)
1605The Pharmaceutical Development section should contain information on the development studies conducted to establish that product formulation, manufacturing process, container closure system, microbiological attributes, and instructions for use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The studies described here are distinguished from routine control tests conducted, according to specifications. Additionally, this section should identify and describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can influence batch reproducibility, product performance, and DP quality. Supportive data and results from specific studies or published literature can be included within or attached to the Pharmaceutical Development section. Additional supportive data can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of the application.1616a.Components of the Drug Product (3.2.P.2.1)1617a.Components of the Drug Product (3.2.P.2.1)1620i.Drug Substance (3.2.P.2.1.1)1621You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral infectivity) that can influence the performance of the DP.1627ii.Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2)1630You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in "Description and Composition of the characteristics of 3.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of the secupients that can influence DP performance.	1604	2. 1 110/11	
1606International content of the product of the studies of the product of the studies of the studies conducted to establish that product formulation on the1607manufacturing process, container closure system, microbiological attributes, and1608instructions for use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The1609studies described here are distinguished from routine control tests conducted,1610according to specifications. Additionally, this section should identify and1611describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can1612influence batch reproducibility, product performance, and DP quality. Supportive1613data and results from specific studies or published literature can be included1614within or attached to the Pharmaceutical Development section. Additional1615supportive data can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of1616the application.1617a.1620i.1621You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the1622components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug1624Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics1625of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral1626ii.Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2)1627iii.Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2)1630You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of1631excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in1632"Description and Composition of the Drug Product"	1605	The Pharmac	eutical Development section should contain information on the
1007manufacturing process, container closure system, microbiological attributes, and1008instructions for use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The109studies described here are distinguished from routine control tests conducted,101according to specifications. Additionally, this section should identify and101describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can101influence batch reproducibility, product performance, and DP quality. Supportive103data and results from specific studies or published literature can be included1041within or attached to the Pharmaceutical Development section. Additional1055supportive data can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of1066the application.1077a.1080Components of the Drug Product (3.2.P.2.1)1081a.1081Components of the Drug Product (3.2.P.2.1)1082You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the1082components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug1082Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics1082of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral1083ii.Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2)1080You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of1081excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in1082"Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section10833.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of<	1606	development	studies conducted to establish that product formulation.
1608Instructions for use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The1609studies described here are distinguished from routine control tests conducted,1610according to specifications. Additionally, this section should identify and1611describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can1612influence batch reproducibility, product performance, and DP quality. Supportive1613data and results from specific studies or published literature can be included1614within or attached to the Pharmaceutical Development section. Additional1615supportive data can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of1616the application.1617a.1618a.1619components of the Drug Product (3.2.P.2.1)1620i.1621You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the1622You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the1623components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug1624Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics1625of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral1626ii.Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2)1630You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of1631excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in1632"Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section16333.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of1634the excipients that can influ	1607	manufacturin	g process container closure system microbiological attributes and
1600induction by the arg hyperprint for most of the proprint of the p	1608	instructions for	or use are appropriate for the stage of clinical development. The
1610according to specifications. Additionally, this section should identify and1611describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can1612influence batch reproducibility, product performance, and DP quality. Supportive1613data and results from specific studies or published literature can be included1614within or attached to the Pharmaceutical Development section. Additional1615supportive data can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of1616the application.1617a.1618a.1619i.1620i.1621Drug Substance (3.2.P.2.1.1)1621ii.1622You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the1623components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug1624Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics1625of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral1626ii.1627iii.1628iii.1630You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of1631excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in1632"Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section16333.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of1634these excipients that can influence DP performance.	1609	studies descri	bed here are distinguished from routine control tests conducted
1611 describe the formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can 1612 influence batch reproducibility, product performance, and DP quality. Supportive 1613 data and results from specific studies or published literature can be included 1614 within or attached to the Pharmaceutical Development section. Additional 1615 supportive data can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of 1616 the application. 1617 a. Components of the Drug Product (3.2.P.2.1) 1618 a. Components of the Drug Product (3.2.P.2.1) 1620 i. Drug Substance (3.2.P.2.1.1) 1621 1 You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the 1623 components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug 1624 Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics 1625 of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral 1626 infectivity) that can influence the performance of the DP. 1627 1 Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2) 1628 ii. Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2) 1629 1 excipients and inactive components of the Drug Product" (section 1631	1610	according to s	specifications Additionally this section should identify and
1011Influence batch reproductivityInfluence by product performance, and DP quality. Supportive1612influence batch reproductivity, so duct performance, and DP quality. Supportive1613data and results from specific studies or published literature can be included1614within or attached to the Pharmaceutical Development section. Additional1615supportive data can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of1616the application.1617a.1618a.1619i.1620i.16211621You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the1623components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug1624Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics1625of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral1626ii.1627ii.1628ii.1629You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of1631excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in1632"Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section16333.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of	1611	describe the f	formulation and process attributes (critical parameters) that can
1613Initiation of out in Production, product of production, and the quality of product of the quality of the product	1612	influence bat	ch reproducibility product performance and DP quality Supportive
1615and that results from specific statutes of particle interaction of interaction of interaction of the particle interaction of interaction of interaction of interaction of interaction of its and that results in our attached to the Pharmaceutical Development section. Additional1615supportive data can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of the application.1616the application.1617a.1618a.1619i.1620i.1621Drug Substance (3.2.P.2.1.1)162116221622You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral infectivity) that can influence the performance of the DP.1627ii.1628iii.1629Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2)1630You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in1632"Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of these excipients that can influence DP performance.	1613	data and resul	Its from specific studies or published literature can be included
1011Whilm of attact to the Filtin metable dot by the Filtin metable dot in Printmetable dot in Printm	1614	within or atta	ched to the Pharmaceutical Development section Additional
1616Support to due out out of referenced to the reference to the reference of the application of the application.1616the application.1617a.1618a.1619i.1620i.162116211622You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the1623components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug1624Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics1625of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral1626ii.1627iii.1628iii.1630You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of1631"Description and Composition of the DP listed in16323.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of1634the sexcipients that can influence DP performance.	1615	supportive da	ta can be referenced to the relevant nonclinical or clinical sections of
161716171618161916201620162116211622162316241624162516251626162616271628162916301631163216331634	1616	the applicatio	n
1617a.Components of the Drug Product (3.2.P.2.1)1619i.Drug Substance (3.2.P.2.1.1)1621ii.Drug Substance (3.2.P.2.1.1)1621You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral infectivity) that can influence the performance of the DP.1626ii.Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2)1628ii.Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2)1629You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of these excipients that can influence DP performance.	1617	the appheatio	
16191.Components of the Drug Product (D20 12011)1620i.Drug Substance (3.2.P.2.1.1)1621You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral infectivity) that can influence the performance of the DP.1626ii.Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2)1627ii.Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2)1629You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of these excipients that can influence DP performance.	1618	а	Components of the Drug Product $(3, 2, \mathbf{P}, 2, 1)$
 i. Drug Substance (3.2.P.2.1.1) ii. Drug Substance (3.2.P.2.1.1) iii. Drug Substance (3.2.P.2.1.1) iii. Components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics iii. Or the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral iii. Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2) iii. Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2) iii. Excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in iii. "Description and Composition of the DP listed in iii. "Description and Composition of the DP listed in iii. "Description and Composition of the DP listed in iii. "Description and Composition of the DP listed in iii. "Description and Composition of the DP listed in iii. "Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section iii. 3.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of iii. these excipients that can influence DP performance. 	1619	ц.	Components of the Drug Product (3.2.1.2.1)
162016211621You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the1623components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug1624Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics1625of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral1626infectivity) that can influence the performance of the DP.1627ii.1628ii.1629You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of1631excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in1632"Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section16333.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of1634these excipients that can influence DP performance.	1620		i Drug Substance $(3 2 P 2 1 1)$
1621You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the1623components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug1624Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics1625of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral1626infectivity) that can influence the performance of the DP.1627ii.1628ii.1629You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of1631excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in1632"Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section16333.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of1634these excipients that can influence DP performance.	1621		
16231600 should describe the comparison of the DS while the1623components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug1624Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics1625of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral1626infectivity) that can influence the performance of the DP.1627ii.1628ii.1629You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of1631excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in16323.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of1634the components that can influence DP performance.	1622		You should describe the compatibility of the DS with the
1625Product" (section 3.2.P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics1625of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral1626infectivity) that can influence the performance of the DP.1627ii. Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2)1629You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of1631excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in1632"Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section16333.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of1634these excipients that can influence DP performance.	1623		components listed in "Description and Composition of the Drug
1625176 duct (because (section 9.2.1 from of the CTD) and the help characteristics1625of the DS (e.g., concentration, viability, aggregation state, viral1626infectivity) that can influence the performance of the DP.1627ii. Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2)1629You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of1631excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in1632"Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section16333.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of1634these excipients that can influence DP performance.	1624		Product" (section 3.2 P.1 of the CTD) and the key characteristics
16261627162716281628ii. Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2)162916301630You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of1631excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in1632"Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section16333.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of1634these excipients that can influence DP performance.	1625		of the DS (e.g. concentration viability aggregation state viral
1620Infectivity) that can influence the performance of the D1.162716281629163016311632163216331634	1626		infectivity) that can influence the performance of the DP
1628ii. Excipients (3.2.P.2.1.2)162916301630You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of1631excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in1632"Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section16333.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of1634these excipients that can influence DP performance.	1627		infectivity) that can influence the performance of the D1.
16291630163116321633163316341634	1628		ii Excinients (3 2 P 2 1 2)
1629You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of1630You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of1631excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in1632"Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section16333.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of1634these excipients that can influence DP performance.	1629		
1631excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in1632"Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section16333.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of1634these excipients that can influence DP performance.	1630		You should describe in your original IND submission the choice of
1632"Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section16333.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of1634these excipients that can influence DP performance.	1631		excipients and inactive components of the DP listed in
16333.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration, and the characteristics of these excipients that can influence DP performance.	1632		"Description and Composition of the Drug Product" (section
1634 these excipients that can influence DP performance.	1633		3.2.P.1 of the CTD), their concentration and the characteristics of
	1634		these excipients that can influence DP performance

1635		
1636	b.	Drug Product (3.2.P.2.2)
1637		
1638		i. Formulation Development (3.2.P.2.2.1)
1639		
1640		You should briefly describe the development of the DP
1641		formulation, taking into consideration the proposed route of
1642		administration and usage in your IND.
1643		
1644		We recommend that you describe any other formulations that have
1645		been used in clinical or preclinical studies and provide a reference
1646		to such studies, if applicable. If formulation changes were needed
1647		for stability, device compatibility, or safety concerns, this
1648		information can be reported here.
1649		-
1650		ii. Overages (3.2.P.2.2.2)
1651		
1652		In your IND, you should describe whether gene therapy product in
1653		excess of your label claim is added during formulation to
1654		compensate for degradation during manufacture or a product's
1655		shelf life or to extend shelf life. We do not recommend the use of
1656		overages, and we recommend that you provide justification for an
1657		overage, as described in Guidance for Industry: "Q8(R2)
1658		Pharmaceutical Development," dated November 2009 (Ref. 6).
1659		•
1660		iii. Physicochemical and Biologic Properties (3.2.P.2.2.3)
1661		
1662		You should describe the parameters relevant to the performance of
1663		the DP in your IND. These parameters include physicochemical or
1664		biological properties of the product (e.g., dosing units, genotypic
1665		or phenotypic variation, particle number and size, aggregation
1666		state, infectivity, specific activity (ratio of infectious to non-
1667		infectious particles or full to empty particles), biological activity or
1668		potency, and/or immunological activity). Understanding these
1669		parameters and how they affect product performance usually
1670		occurs over the course of product development. More information
1671		on pharmaceutical development and consideration in establishing
1672		critical quality attributes during the clinical research phase can be
1673		found in Guidance for Industry: "Q8(R2) Pharmaceutical
1674		Development," dated November 2009 (Ref. 6).
1675		
1676		You should update this section on the physiochemical and
1677		biological properties of your product as you gain a better
1678		understanding of the CQA, during development.
1679		

1680	
1681	c. Manufacturing Process Development (3.2.P.2.3)
1682	
1683	You should describe the selection and optimization of the DP
1684	manufacturing process (described in "Description of Manufacturing
1685	Process and Process Controls," section 3.2.P.3.3 of the CTD) if
1686	development studies have been performed.
1687	1 1
1688	d. Container Closure System (3.2.P.2.4)
1689	
1690	You should describe the suitability of the container closure system, which
1691	vou have described in the "Container Closure System" (section 3.2.P.7 of
1692	the CTD), for the storage, transportation (shipping), and use of the DP.
1693	
1694	We recommend that you consider choice of materials, protection from
1695	moisture and light compatibility with the formulation (including
1696	adsorption to the container and leaching), safety of materials, and
1697	performance. For more information on container closure systems, refer to
1698	FDA's "Guidance for Industry: Container Closure Systems for Packaging
1699	Human Drugs and Biologics " dated May 1999 (Ref. 27)
1700	Tumun Drugs and Drotogies, "dated thay 1999 (Ref. 27).
1701	In the selection of your container closure system, we also recommend that
1702	you consider how lots of your product will be tested for final product
1703	release. For gene therapy products that are manufactured in small lot sizes
1704	(e.g. autologous cell products or products vialed at very high dose levels)
1705	it may be challenging or not possible to dedicate a final container or
1706	multiple vials for lot release testing. In this case, we recommend that you
1707	consider a final container that can be sampled for release testing or that
1708	you consider alternatives to final container testing
1709	you consider alternatives to mail container testing.
1710	e Microbiological Attributes (3 2 P 2 5)
1711	
1712	We recommend, for live products intended to be sterile, that you provide
1713	details on measures taken to ensure asentic processing describe the final
1714	product microbial testing and address how the integrity of the container
1715	closure system to prevent microbial contamination will be assessed
1716	erosure system to prevent interostar containination with be assessed.
1717	f Compatibility (3 2 P 2 6)
1718	1. Compationity (5.2.1.2.0)
1719	You should discuss the compatibility of the DP with the diluent used for
1720	reconstitution or the delivery device as appropriate
1721	reconstruction of the derivery device, as appropriate.
1722	We recommend that compatibility studies include measures of both
1723	nroduct quantity and product activity (e.g. for viral vectors a measure of
1723	physical particles and infectivity to assess both adsorption and
	physical particles and intectivity to assess both ausorphon and

1725		inactivation). This in-use and in-device stability data should support
1726		recommended hold times and conditions outlined in the clinical protocol
1727		for patient administration.
1728		
1729	3.	Manufacture (3.2.P.3)
1730		
1731		a. Manufacturers (3.2.P.3.1)
1732		
1733		You should provide the name, address, and responsibility of each
1734		manufacturer, including contractor manufacturer(s), involved in the
1735		manufacture and testing of the DP
1736		manufactore and testing of the D1.
1737		For gene therapy-device combination products, we recommend that you
1738		list the manufacturing facilities for the device components and describe
1730		the assembly and testing processes taking place at each site, as described
1739		in EDA's aCTD Tashnisal Conformance Cuide (Def 4). You should also
1740		in FDA's eCTD Technical Conformance Guide (Ref. 4). You should also
1/41		identify whether facilities follow the combination product streamlined
1/42		manufacturing approach (as described in FDA's Guidance for Industry
1/43		and FDA Staff: "Current Good Manufacturing Practice Requirements for
1/44		Combination Products," dated January 2017 (Ref. 28) and identify the
1745		specific set of regulations (i.e., 21 CFR Part 211 or Part 820).
1746		
1747		b. Batch Formula (3.2.P.3.2)
1748		
1749		You should provide a batch formula that includes a list of all components
1750		of the dosage form, their amounts on a per-batch basis, and a reference to
1751		their quality standards.
1752		
1753		c. Description of Manufacturing Process and Process Controls
1754		(3.2.P.3.3)
1755		
1756		You should provide a detailed description of the DP manufacturing
1757		process and identify process controls, intermediate tests, and final product
1758		controls. Your description should include both flow diagram(s) and
1759		narrative description(s) as well as packaging, product contact materials.
1760		and equipment used. This process can include manufacturing steps, such
1761		as final formulation, filtration, filling and freezing, and process controls
1762		and release testing. For ex vivo genetically modified cells that are
1763		administered immediately after manufacturing an in-process sterility
1764		testing on sample taken 48 to 72 hours prior to final harvest is one part of
1765		the sterility testing recommended for product release Please see
1766		"Microbiological Attributes (3.2.P.2.5)" (section V.R.2.e. of this
1767		guidance) for more information on final product sterility testing for fresh
1768		cells
1769		
1/0/		

1770		
1771		d. Controls of Critical Steps and Intermediates (3.2.P.3.4)
1772		
1773		You should describe the control of critical steps and intermediates in the
1774		manufacturing process. Critical steps should include those outlined in the
1775		"Description of Manufacturing Process and Process Controls" (section
1776		3.2.P.3.3 of the CTD) to ensure control as well as steps in which tests with
1777		acceptance criteria are performed. We recommend that you provide
1778		justification for acceptance criteria or limits set for these tests. In addition,
1779		you should provide information on the quality and control of intermediates
1780		of the manufacturing process. Manufacturing intermediates are defined by
1781		the manufacturer and may include material from collection steps or hold
1782		steps.
1783		
1784		e. Process Validation and/or Evaluation (3.2.P.3.5)
1785		
1786		Process validation is not required for early stage manufacturing, and thus,
1787		most original IND submissions will not include this information.
1788		However, we do recommend that early stage INDs have information on
1789		methods used to prevent contamination, cross-contamination, and product
1790		mix-ups. For more information on functions of the Quality Unit under
1791		IND, please see "Process Validation and/or Evaluation (3.2.S.2.5)"
1792		(section V.A.2.e. of this guidance).
1793		
1794	4.	Control of Excipients (3.2.P.4)
1795		
1796		a. Specifications (3.2.P.4.1)
1797		
1798		You should provide specifications for all excipients listed in "Excipients"
1799		(section 3.2.P.2.1.2 of the CTD). For purpose of this guidance, an
1800		excipient is any component, in addition to the active ingredient, that is
1801		intended to be part of the final product (e.g., human serum albumin or
1802		Dimethyl Sulfoxide (DMSO)).
1803		
1804		b. Analytical Procedures (3.2.P.4.2)
1805		
1806		You should describe your analytical procedures for testing excipients.
1807		
1808		c. Validation of Analytical Procedures (3.2.P.4.3)
1809		
1810		Validation of analytical procedures is usually not required for original
1811		IND submissions. We recommend that you provide any available
1812		validation information for the analytical procedures used to test excipients.
1813		
1814		

1815		
1816		d. Justification of Specifications (3.2.P.4.4)
1817		- · · · · ·
1818		You should provide justification for the proposed excipient specifications.
1819		
1820		e. Excipients of Human or Animal Origin (3.2.P.4.5)
1821		
1822		For excipients of human or animal origin, you should provide information
1823		regarding source, specifications, description of testing performed, and
1824		viral safety data. For human serum, we recommend that you submit
1825		information documenting donor suitability as well as appropriate
1826		infectious disease testing. You should ensure that collection is performed
1827		by a licensed blood bank and that testing meets the requirements described
1828		in 21 CFR Part 640.
1829		
1830		f. Novel Excipients (3.2.P.4.6)
1831		
1832		For excipients used for the first time in a DP or used for the first time in a
1833		route of administration, you should provide full details of manufacture,
1834		characterization, and controls, with cross-references to supporting safety
1835		data (nonclinical and/or clinical).
1836		
1837	5.	Control of Drug Product (3.2.P.5)
1838		
1839		a. Specifications (3.2.P.5.1)
1840		
1841		You should list DP specifications in your original IND submission. Your
1842		testing plan should be adequate to describe the physical, chemical, or
1843		biological characteristics of the DP necessary to ensure that the DP meets
1844		acceptable limits for identity, strength (potency), quality, and purity (21
1845		CFR $312.23(a)(7)(iv)(b)$). Product lots that fail to meet specifications
1846		should not be used in your clinical investigation without FDA approval.
1847		For early phase clinical studies, we recommend that assays be in place to
1848		assess safety (which includes tests to ensure freedom from extraneous
1849		material, adventitious agents, and microbial contamination) and dose (e.g.,
1850		vector genomes, vector particles, or genetically modified cells) of the
1851		product. Additional information on safety testing and measuring product
1852		dose is described in "Specification (3.2.S.4.1)" (section V.A.4.a. of this
1853		guidance).
1854		
1855		We recommend that product release assays be performed at the
1856		manufacturing step at which they are necessary and appropriate. For
1857		example, mycoplasma and adventitious agents release testing is
1858		recommended on cell culture harvest material, as discussed in
1859		"Specification (3.2.S.4.1)" (section V.A.4.a. of this guidance). In

1860	addition, sterility, endotoxin, and identity testing are recommended on the
1861	final container product to ensure absence of microbial contamination or to
1862	detect product mix-ups that might have occurred during the final DP
1863	manufacturing steps (e.g., buffer exchange, dilution, or finish and fill
1864	steps). DP specifications should be further refined as a part of product
1865	development under IND. We recommend that sponsors establish or, in
1866	some cases, tighten acceptance criteria, based on manufacturing
1867	experience as clinical development proceeds. Acceptance criteria should
1868	also be established, based on clinical lots shown to be safe and effective.
1869	when appropriate. We also recommend that sponsors develop testing to
1870	assess product potency and have this assay in place prior to pivotal
1871	studies. For licensure, a complete set of specifications to ensure the safety
1872	and effectiveness of the product must include the general biological
1873	products standards, as outlined in 21 CFR Part 610
1874	
1875	h Analytical Procedures $(3, 2, \mathbf{P}, 5, 2)$
1876	5. Amarytical Procedures (5.2.1.5.2)
1877	You should describe the analytical procedures used for testing the DP If
1878	the analytical procedures are the same as those for the DS you do not
1879	need to reneat this information unless there is a matrix effect from the DP
1880	on assay performance. Please reference the appropriate section of your
1881	IND where this information can be found (e.g. Drug Substance
1882	"Analytical Procedures" section 3.2.8.4.2 of the CTD) We have the
1883	following additional comments regarding these tests:
1884	Tonowing additional comments regarding these tests.
1885	i Sterility
1886	i. Sterinty
1887	We recognize that the compendial sterility test may not be suitable
1888	for all products. As mentioned in "Analytical Procedures" (section
1889	3 2 S 4 2 of this guidance) ranid sterility tests may be needed for
1890	ex vivo genetically modified cells administered fresh or with
1891	limited hold time between final formulation and patient
1892	administration
1893	
1894	For ex vivo genetically modified cells that are administered
1895	immediately after manufacturing in-process sterility testing on
1896	sample taken 48 to 72 hours prior to final harvest is recommended
1897	for product release. For such products, aside from an in-process
1808	sterility test, we also recommend that sponsors perform a rapid
1800	microbial detection test, such as a Gram stain, on the final
1900	formulated product and a sterility test, compliant with 21 CER
1001	610.12 on the final formulated product
1002	010.12, on the final formulated product.
1902	Under this approach the release criteria for starility would be
1903	based on a negative regult of the Grow stein and a negative regult
1704	based on a negative result of the Gram stain and a no-growth result

1905	from the 48 to 72 hour in-process sterility test. Although the
1906	results of the sterility culture performed on the final product will
1907	not be available for product release, this testing will provide useful
1908	data. A negative result will provide assurance that an aseptic
1909	technique was maintained. A positive result will provide
1910	information for the medical management of the subject and trigger
1911	an investigation of the cause of the sterility failure. The sterility
1912	culture on the final formulated product should be continued for the
1913	full duration (usually 14 days) to obtain the final sterility test
1914	result, even after the product has been administered to the patient.
1915	
1916	In all cases where product release is prior to obtaining results from
1917	a full 14-day sterility test, the investigational plan should address
1918	the actions to be taken in the event that the 14-day sterility test is
1919	determined to be positive after the product is administered to a
1920	subject. You should report the sterility failure to both the clinical
1921	investigator and FDA. We recommend that you include results of
1922	investigation of cause and any corrective actions in an information
1923	amendment submitted to your IND within 30 calendar days after
1924	initial receipt of the positive culture test result (21 CFR 312.31).
1925	
1926	In the case of a positive microbial test result, the clinical
1927	investigator should evaluate the subject for any signs of infection
1928	that may be attributable to the product sterility failure. If the
1929	patient experiences any serious and unexpected adverse drug event
1930	that could be from administration of the non-sterile gene therapy
1931	product, then you must report this information to FDA in an IND
1932	safety report no more than 15 calendar days after your initial
1933	receipt of the information (21 CFR 312.32). If you determine that
1934	an investigational drug presents an unreasonable and significant
1935	risk to subjects of a positive microbial test result or for any other
1936	reason, you must discontinue those investigations that present the
1937	risk and notify FDA, all Institutional Review Boards, and all
1938	investigators (21 CFR 312.56(d)).
1939	
1940	In addition, please be aware that a product may sometimes
1941	interfere with the results of sterility testing. For example, a
1942	product component or manufacturing impurities (e.g., antibiotics)
1943	may have mycotoxic or anti-bacterial properties. Therefore, we
1944	recommend that you assess the validity of the sterility assay using
1945	the bacteriostasis and fungistasis testing, as described in USP $<71>$
1946	Sterility Tests.
1947	
1948	

1949	If you freeze DP before use, we recommend that you perform
1950	sterility testing on the product prior to cryopreservation so that
1951	results will be available before the product is administered to a
1952	patient. However, if the product undergoes manipulation after
1953	thawing (e.g., washing, culturing), particularly if procedures are
1954	performed in an open system, you may need to repeat sterility
1955	testing.
1956	-
1957	We recommend that you incorporate the results of in-process
1958	sterility testing into your acceptance criteria for final product
1959	specifications.
1960	
1961	ii. Identity
1962	
1963	We recommend that identity assays uniquely identify a product
1964	and distinguish it from other products in the same facility. This
1965	test is performed on the final labeled product to verify its contents
1966	(21 CFR 610.14). Sometimes, a single test is not sufficient to
1967	distinguish clearly among products, and therefore, it is good
1968	practice to use different types of test methods (e.g., vector genome
1969	restriction digest and protein capsid analysis).
1970	
1971	If the final product is ex vivo genetically modified cells, we
1972	recommend that identity testing include an assay to measure the
1973	presence of vector (i.e., expression assay, restriction digest) or
1974	genetic change and an assay specific for the cellular composition
1975	of the final product (e.g., cell surface markers).
1976	
1977	iii. Purity
1978	
1979	Product purity is defined as the relative freedom from extraneous
1980	matter in the finished product, whether or not it is harmful to the
1981	recipient or deleterious to the product (21 CFR 600.3). Purity
1982	testing includes assays for pyrogenicity or endotoxin and residual
1983	manufacturing impurities, as outlined under "Impurities
1984	(3.2.S.3.2)" (section V.A.3.b. of this guidance) of drug substance,
1985	which include but are not limited to proteins; DNA; cell debris;
1986	reagents/components used during manufacture, such as cytokines,
1987	growth factors, antibodies, and serum; and in the case of ex vivo
1988	genetically modified cells, any unintended cellular populations.
1989	
1990	Although the rabbit pyrogen test method is the current required
1991	method for testing licensed biological products for pyrogenic
1992	substances (21 CFR 610.13), we generally accept alternative test
1993	methods, such as the Limulus Amebocyte Lysate (LAL), under

1994	IND. For any parenteral drug, except those administered
1995	intrathecally, we recommend that the upper limit of acceptance
1996	criterion for endotoxin be 5 EU/kg body weight/hour. For
1997	intrathecally-administered drugs, we recommend an upper limit of
1998	acceptance be set at 0.2 EU/kg body weight/hour.
1999	
2000	iv. Potency
2001	
2002	You should describe and justify in your IND all assays that you
2003	will use to measure potency. A potency assay is not required to
2004	initiate early phase clinical studies, but we recommend that you
2005	have a well-qualified assay to determine dose, as described below
2006	and in "Validation of Analytical Procedures (3.2.S.4.3)" (section
2007	V.A.4.c. of this guidance). For additional information on potency
2008	assays, please see FDA's "Guidance for Industry: Potency Tests
2009	for Cellular and Gene Therapy Products," dated January 2011
2010	(Ref. 19).
2011	
2012	v. Viability
2013	·
2014	You should establish minimum release criteria for viability, where
2015	appropriate. For ex vivo genetically modified cells, we
2016	recommend a minimum acceptable viability of at least 70 percent.
2017	If this level cannot be achieved, we recommend that you submit
2018	data in support of a lower viability specification, demonstrating,
2019	for example, that dead cells and cell debris do not affect the safe
2020	administration of the product and/or the therapeutic effect.
2021	
2022	vi. Cell Number or Dose
2023	
2024	Your dose-determining assay is an important part of your product
2025	specifications. For additional information on your dose-
2026	determining assay, please see "Specification (3.2.S.4.1)" (section
2027	V.A.4.a. of this guidance). If your final product is a genetically
2028	modified cell therapy, you should have an acceptance criterion for
2029	the minimum number of modified cells in a product lot. We
2030	recommend that the product dose be based on the total number of
2031	genetically modified cells.
2032	
2033	c. Validation of Analytical Procedures (3.2.P.5.3)
2034	
2035	Validation of analytical procedures is usually not required for original
2036	IND submissions, but we do recommend that you qualify certain safety-
2037	related or dose-related assays, even at an early stage of development (see
2038	

2039 2040 2041 2042	"Validation of Analytical Procedures (3.2.S.4.3)," section V.A.4.c. of this guidance). If they are the same as those listed for DS testing, you do not need to repeat them but should reference that section of your IND.
2042 2043 2044	d. Batch Analyses (3.2.P.5.4)
2045	You should provide final product COA(s) or a description of batches and
2040	results of batch analyses for the Dr.
2047	Characterization of Impurities (2.2 D 5.5)
2040	e. Characterization of impurities (5.2.F.5.5)
2049	Vou should provide information on characterization of impurities if not
2050	provided in "Impurities" (section 3.2.5.3.2 of the CTD)
2051	previously provided in impurities (section 5.2.5.5.2 of the CTD).
2052	f Justification of Specifications (3.2.P.5.6)
2053	1. Justification of Specifications (5.2.1.5.0)
2055	You should provide justification for the DP specifications. See
2055	"Justification of Specification (3.2.8.4.5)" (section V A 4 e. of this
2057	guidance) for additional details
2058	
2059	6. Reference Standards or Materials (3.2.P.6)
2060	
2061	You should provide information on the reference standards or reference materials
2062	used in testing the DP if not previously provided in "Reference Standards or
2063	Materials" (section 3.2.S.5 of the CTD).
2064	
2065	7. Container Closure System (3.2.P.7)
2066	
2067	You should provide a description of the container closure systems, including
2068	identity of materials of construction or each primary packaging component and its
2069	specification. You should also provide information on how the container is
2070	sterilized.
2071	
2072	Please see "Container Closure System (3.2.P.2.4)" (section V.B.5.d. of this
2073	guidance) for more information and recommendations, regarding the suitability of
2074	different final product containers.
2075	-
2076	If the final container is an FDA-cleared device, we recommend that you reference
2077	the 510(k) number for the device in your submission. For device combination
2078	products, we recommend that you include a table of contents for the combination
2079	product (with reference links to other files) in this section, as described in FDA's
2080	eCTD Technical Conformance Guide (Ref. 4).
2081	
2082	

2083		8.	Stability (3.2.P.8)
2084			
2085			a. Stability Summary and Conclusion (3.2.P.8.1)
2086			
2087			You should summarize the types of studies conducted, protocols used, and
2088			the results of the studies. Your summary should include, for example,
2089			conclusions regarding storage conditions and shelf life as well as in-use
2090			and in-device storage conditions.
2091			
2092			If a short-term clinical investigation is proposed, or if a continuous
2093			manufacturing process with limited product hold times is used, stability
2094			data submitted may be correspondingly limited. For early stage INDs,
2095			stability data for the gene therapy may not be available to support the
2096			entire duration of the proposed clinical investigation. Therefore, we
2097			recommend that you submit a prospective plan to collect stability
2098			information and update this information to the IND in a timely manner
2099			(e.g., in an annual IND update).
2100			
2101			b. Post-Approval Stability Protocol and Stability Commitment
2102			(3.2.P.8.2)
2103			()
2104			We do not recommend that you provide a post-approval stability protocol
2105			and stability commitment in your IND submission. However, as product
2106			development continues, we recommend that you consult with your Quality
2107			Reviewer to determine the type of studies that will be necessary to support
2108			product expiration dates for commercial manufacturing.
2109			produce expiration dates for commercial manaractaring.
2110			c Stability Data (3 2 P 8 3)
2110			
2112			You should provide results of the stability studies in your IND in an
2112			appropriate format (e.g. tabular graphic parrative) Information on the
2113			analytical procedures used to generate the data should also be included
2115			and this may be referenced to other sections of your submission (e.g.
2115			"Analytical Procedures" section 3.2 P.5.2 of the (CTD)
2110			Analytical Procedures, section 5.2.1.5.2 of the CTD).
2117	C	Annon	diags(3.2.1)
2110	C.	Appen	luices (J.2.A)
2119		1	Excilition and Equipment $(2, 2, \Lambda, 1)$
2120		1.	Facilities and Equipment (5.2.A.1)
2121		Vanal	and a married a diagram illustration the manufacturing flows of the
2122		I OU SI	activing areas, information on all developmental or approved products
2123		manula	acturing areas, information on an developmental or approved products
2124		manip	ation on another and design features of the featility to many the
2123		inform	auon on procedures and design features of the facility, to prevent
2120		contan	lination or cross-contamination.
2127			

2128	A description of the Quality Unit and the quality control (QC) and quality
2129	assurance (QA) responsibilities may be included in this section.
2130	
2131	COAs for all raw materials and reagents described in your IND may be put in this
2132	section.
2133	
2134	2. Adventitious Agents Safety Evaluation (3.2.A.2)
2135	
2136	You should provide information assessing the risk of potential contamination with
2137	adventitious agents. For non-viral adventitious agents, we recommend that you
2138	provide detailed information on the avoidance and control of transmissible
2139	spongiform encephalopathy agents, bacteria, mycoplasma, and fungi. This
2140	information can include certification and/or testing of components and control of
2141	the production process. For viral adventitious agents, we recommend that you
2142	provide information on viral safety studies. Study reports and data to support
2143	qualification of your manufacturing components (such as adventitious agents test
2144	reports for banked materials) may be submitted as a part of this appendix. These
2145	studies should demonstrate that the materials used in production are considered
2146	safe and that the approaches used to test, evaluate, and eliminate potential risks,
2147	during manufacture, are suitable.
2148	
2149	Data collected (i.e., study reports) for adventitious agent testing can be placed in
2150	this section.

Draft – Not for Implementation

2151 VI. REFERENCES2152

2153	1.	Guidance for FDA Reviewers and Sponsors: Content and Review of Chemistry,
2154		Manufacturing, and Control (CMC) Information for Human Gene Therapy
2155		Investigational New Drug Applications (INDs), April 2008,
2156		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulator
2157		yInformation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM078694.pdf
2158	2.	Guidance for Industry: M4Q: The CTD – Quality, August 2001,
2159		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guid
2160		ances/UCM073280.pdf
2161	3.	Providing Regulatory Submissions in Electronic Format – Certain Human
2162		Pharmaceutical Product Applications and Related Submissions Using the eCTD
2163		Specifications; Guidance for Industry, April 2018,
2164		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guid
2165		ances/UCM333969.pdf
2166	4.	eCTD Technical Conformance Guide: Technical Specifications Document, November
2167		2017,
2168		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/DevelopmentApprovalProcess/FormsSubmission
2169		Requirements/ElectronicSubmissions/UCM465411.pdf
2170	5.	Determining the Need for and Content of Environmental Assessments for Gene
2171		Therapies, Vectored Vaccines, and Related Recombinant Viral or Microbial Products;
2172		Guidance for Industry, March 2015,
2173		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulator
2174		yInformation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM439273.pdf
2175	6.	Guidance for Industry: Q8(R2) Pharmaceutical Development, November 2009,
2176		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidances/ucm073507.pdf
2177	7.	Guidance for Industry: Q11 Development and Manufacture of Drug Substances,
2178		November 2012,
2179		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidances/ucm261078.pdf
2180	8.	Guidance for Industry: Expedited Programs for Serious Conditions – Drugs and
2181		Biologics, May 2014,
2182		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/Guidances/UCM358301.pdf
2183	9.	M4E(R2): The CTD – Efficacy: Guidance for Industry, July 2017,
2184		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guid
2185		ances/UCM465221.pdf
2186	10.	Recommendations for Microbial Vectors used for Gene Therapy; Guidance for Industry,
2187		September 2016,
2188		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulator
2189		yInformation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM466625.pdf
2190	11.	Contract Manufacturing Arrangements for Drugs: Quality Agreements; Guidance for
2191		Industry, November 2016,
2192		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidances/ucm353925.pdf
2193	12.	Guidance for Industry: Characterization and Qualification of Cell Substrates and Other
2194		Biological Materials Used in the Production of Viral Vaccines for Infectious Disease
2195		Indications, February 2010,

2196		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulator
2197		yInformation/Guidances/Vaccines/UCM202439.pdf
2198	13.	Points to Consider in the Manufacture and Testing of Monoclonal Antibody Products for
2199		Human Use, February 1997,
2200		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/biologicsbloodvaccines/guidancecomplianceregulatoryin
2201		formation/otherrecommendationsformanufacturers/ucm153182.pdf
2202	14.	Final Rule: Eligibility Determination for Donors of Human Cells, Tissues, and Cellular
2203		and Tissue-Based Products (69 FR 29786, May 25, 2004),
2204		https://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/FR-2004-05-25/pdf/04-11245.pdf
2205	15.	Federal Register Notice: International Conference on Harmonisation; Guidance on
2206		Quality of Biotechnological/Biological Products: Derivation and Characterization of Cell
2207		Substrates Used for Production of Biotechnological/Biological Products (63 FR 50244,
2208		September 21, 1998).
2209		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guid
2210		ances/UCM073471.pdf
2211	16.	Guidance for Industry: CGMP for Phase 1 Investigational Drugs, July 2008.
2212	101	https://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidances/ucm070273.pdf
2213	17.	Guidance for Industry: Quality Systems Approach to Pharmaceutical CGMP
2213	17.	Regulations September 2006
2215		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/Guidances/UCM070337.pdf
2215	18	Guidance for Industry: Process Validation: General Principles and Practices January
2210	10.	2011.
2218		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidances/ucm070336.pdf
2219	19.	Guidance for Industry: Potency Tests for Cellular and Gene Therapy Products. January
2220		2011.
2220		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/biologicsbloodyaccines/guidancecomplianceregulatoryin
2222		formation/guidances/cellularandgenetherany/ucm243392 ndf
2222	20	Points to Consider in the Characterization of Cell Lines Used to Produce Biologicals
2223	20.	Inly 1993
2221		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/SafetyAvailability/UCM16286
2225		3 ndf
2220	21	<u>Guidance for Industry:</u> Supplemental Guidance on Testing for Replication Competent
2227	<i>2</i> 1.	Retrovirus in Retroviral Vector Based Gene Therapy Products and During Follow-up of
2220		Patients in Clinical Trials Using Retroviral Vectors, November 2006
222)		https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulator
2230		<u>https://www.ida.gov/dowinoads/biologicsblood vacenics/GuidanceComplianceRegulator</u>
2231	$\gamma\gamma$	Testing of Petroviral Vector Based Human Gene Therapy Products for Penlication
2232	<i>LL</i> .	Compatent Patrovirus During Product Manufacture and Patient Follow up: Draft
2233		Cuidenee for Industry, July 2018
2234		bttng://www.fde.gov/downloads/DiologiosDloadVaccines/CuidenesComplianceDegulater
2233		<u>inups.//www.iua.gov/uowiiioaus/BiologicsBioodvaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulator</u>
2230	22	yintormation/Guidances/CentularandGene i nerapy/UCIVI010800.pdf
2237	23.	Suidance for industry: Q2B vandation of Analytical Procedures: Methodology,
2238		https://www.fde.com/devrelee.de/devee/evider.com/072284.s.ff
2239		hubs.//www.ida.gov/downloads/drugs/guidances/ucmu/5584.Ddl

- 2240 24. Guideline for Industry: Quality of Biotechnological Products: Stability Testing of
 2241 Biotechnological/Biological Products, July 1996,
 2242 <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guid</u>
 2243 ances/UCM073466.pdf
- 2244 25. Guidance for Industry: Q1A(R2) Stability Testing of New Drug Substances and 2245 Products, November 2003,
- 2246https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guid2247ances/UCM073369.pdf
- 2248 26. Guidance for Industry: Q1E Evaluation of Stability Data, June 2004,
 2249 <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guid</u>
 2250 ances/UCM073380.pdf
- 2251 27. Guidance for Industry: Container Closure Systems for Packaging Human Drugs and
 2252 Biologics, May 1999,
- 2253 https://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidances/ucm070551.pdf
- 225428.Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff: Current Good Manufacturing Practice2255Requirements for Combination Products, January 2017,
- 2256 <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/RegulatoryInformation/Guidances/UCM429304.pdf</u>

Long Term Follow-Up After Administration of Human Gene Therapy Products

Draft Guidance for Industry

This guidance document is for comment purposes only.

Submit one set of either electronic or written comments on this draft guidance by the date provided in the *Federal Register* notice announcing the availability of the draft guidance. Submit electronic comments to <u>https://www.regulations.gov</u>. Submit written comments to the Dockets Management Staff (HFA-305), Food and Drug Administration, 5630 Fishers Lane, Rm. 1061, Rockville, MD 20852. You should identify all comments with the docket number listed in the notice of availability that publishes in the *Federal Register*.

Additional copies of this guidance are available from the Office of Communication, Outreach and Development (OCOD), 10903 New Hampshire Ave., Bldg. 71, Rm. 3128, Silver Spring, MD 20993-0002, or by calling 1-800-835-4709 or 240-402-8010, or email <u>ocod@fda.hhs.gov</u>, or from the Internet at <a href="https://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceBegulatoryInformation/GuidanceComplianceBegul

<u>https://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/GuidanceS/default.htm</u>.

For questions on the content of this guidance, contact OCOD at the phone numbers or email address listed above.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Food and Drug Administration Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research July 2018

Draft – Not for Implementation

Table of Contents

I.	INTRODUCTION1				
II.	SCOPE				
III.	BACKGROUND				
	 A. Potential Risks of Delayed Adverse Events Following Exposure to Human Gene Therapy Products				
	D. Long Term Follow-up for Novel Gene Therapy Products				
IV.	PRECLINICAL DATA USED FOR ASSESSMENT OF DELAYED RISKS IN GENE THERAPY CLINICAL TRIALS				
	 A. Criteria to Assess Potential Delayed Risks of Gene Therapy Products				
	Editing 15				
V.	RECOMMENDATIONS FOR PROTOCOLS FOR LONG TERM FOLLOW-UP OBSERVATIONS: CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS				
	 A. Goals of the Long Term Follow-up Observations				
VI.	GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR POST-MARKETING MONITORING PLANS FOR GENE THERAPY PRODUCTS				
VII.	LONG TERM FOLLOW-UP UNDER SPECIAL CIRCUMSTANCES				
VIII.	DEFINITIONS				
IX.	REFERENCES				
APPE	NDICES				

Draft – Not for Implementation

Long Term Follow-Up After Administration of Human Gene Therapy Products

Draft Guidance for Industry

This draft guidance, when finalized, will represent the current thinking of the Food and Drug Administration (FDA or Agency) on this topic. It does not establish any rights for any person and is not binding on FDA or the public. You can use an alternative approach if it satisfies the requirements of the applicable statutes and regulations. To discuss an alternative approach, contact the FDA staff responsible for this guidance as listed on the title page.

13 14

15

1

2 3 4

5 6 7

8

9

10

11

12

I. INTRODUCTION

16 We, FDA, are providing you, a sponsor who is developing a human gene therapy (GT) product,¹ 17 18 recommendations regarding the design of long term follow-up observational studies (LTFU 19 observations) for the collection of data on delayed adverse events following administration of a 20 GT product. Often, GT products are designed to achieve therapeutic effect through permanent or 21 long-acting changes in the human body. As a result of long term exposure to an investigational 22 GT product, study subjects may be at increased risk of undesirable and unpredictable outcomes 23 which may present as delayed adverse event(s). To understand and mitigate the risk of a delayed 24 adverse event, subjects in gene therapy trials may be monitored for an extended period of time, 25 which is commonly referred to as the "long term follow-up" (LTFU) period (of a clinical study). LTFU observations are extended assessments that continue some of the scheduled observations 26 27 of a clinical trial past the active follow-up period, and are an integral portion of the study of 28 some investigational GT products. LTFU observations are important to monitor long term safety 29 of GT products. For GT products that present long term risks to subjects, LTFU/surveillance 30 plan(s) should also be put in place post-licensure for monitoring of delayed adverse events (for 31 details we refer you to section VI. of this document). Not all GT products will require LTFU 32 observations; a risk assessment is performed by a sponsor based on several factors as outlined in 33 this guidance. 34 35

In this guidance, we provide a brief introduction of the product characteristics, patient-related factors, and the preclinical and clinical data that should be considered when assessing the need for LTFU observations for your GT product. We also provide recommendations for the study design of LTFU observations with specific considerations for different gene therapy products and recommendations on patient monitoring for licensed GT products. Definitions of terms used throughout this guidance are provided in section VIII. of this document.

41

¹ See section VIII. Definitions: Human gene therapy product.

Draft – Not for Implementation

42 This draft guidance, when finalized, is intended to supersede the document entitled "Guidance

43 for Industry: Gene Therapy Clinical Trials – Observing Subjects for Delayed Adverse Events"

44 dated November 2006 (Ref. 1) (2006 Delayed Adverse Events). This draft guidance, when

45 finalized, is also intended to supplement the guidance entitled "Testing of Retroviral Vector-

46 Based Human Gene Therapy Products for Replication Competent Retrovirus during Product

47 Manufacture and Patient Follow-up; Draft Guidance for Industry" dated July 2018.

48

FDA's guidance documents, including this draft guidance, do not establish legally enforceable
 responsibilities. Instead, guidances describe the FDA's current thinking on a topic and should be

- 50 viewed only as recommendations, unless specific regulatory or statutory requirements are cited.
- 52 The use of the word *should* in FDA's guidances means that something is suggested or
- 53 recommended, but not required.
- 54 55

56 **II. SCOPE**

57

58 This guidance applies to all GT clinical studies and to licensed GT products for which LTFU 59 observations are warranted based on analyses of available preclinical and clinical safety data for 60 the GT product that raises concerns for delayed adverse events. The recommendations in this 61 guidance apply to gene therapies that produce long lasting genetic effects (that is, gene therapy 62 that represents more than just transient expression of a gene) and the performance of LTFU 63 observations for evidence of delayed adverse events, i.e., adverse events that occur past the 64 active follow-up period after exposure to the GT product, as described in the main study 65 protocol.

66 67

70

71

72 73

74

75 76

77 78

79

80

81

82

83

84

68 III. BACKGROUND69

A. Potential Risks of Delayed Adverse Events Following Exposure to Human Gene Therapy Products

Characteristics unique to human GT products that may be associated with delayed adverse events include:

1. The integration activity of the GT product: The biological activity of retroviral vectors² (e.g., vectors derived from gammaretrovirus, lentivirus, foamy virus etc.) and transposon elements is imparted by an integration event in the genome. In general, such integration is not directed to specific sites in the human genome, and this raises the potential for disruption of critical host (human) genes at the site of integration, or activation of proto-oncogenes near the integration site(s) and, thereby, the risk for malignancies.

² See section VIII. Definitions: Vector.

85		2.	Genome editing activity: Genome editing based GT products impart their
86			biological activity through site-specific changes in the human genome, but
87			may also have off-target effects on the genome (Ref. 2). Similar to
88			integrating vectors, genome editing may produce undesirable changes in
89			the genome (whether <i>ex vivo</i> or <i>in vivo</i>), with the risk of malignancies,
90			impairment of gene function, etc.
91			
92		3.	Prolonged expression: A GT product where the transgene (therapeutic
93			gene) encodes growth factors, such as vascular endothelial growth factor
94			(VEGF) or proteins associated with cell division such as p53, may raise
95			the potential for unregulated cell growth and malignancies due to
96			prolonged exposure to the therapeutic protein Similarly transgenes
97			encoding immune recognition factors such as chimeric antigen recentors
98			or T-cell recentors introduce the risk for autoimmune-like reactions (to
99			self-antigens) upon prolonged exposure. For GT products that carry
100			transcriptional regulatory elements (e.g. microRNA) or immune-
101			modulatory proteins (e.g., cytokines) there is also the risk of unknown
101			pleotropic effects including altered expression of host (human) genes that
102			could result in unpredictable and undesirable outcomes
103			could result in unpredictible and undesnuble outcomes.
105		4	Latency: When the GT product has the potential for latency such as a
105		4.	harpesvirus, there is the potential for reactivation from latency, such as a
107			of delayed adverse events related to a symptomatic infection
107			of delayed adverse events related to a symptomatic infection.
100		5	Establishment of persistent infections: GT products that are replication
110		5.	competent viruses and bacteria, such as listeria based bacterial vectors
110			have the potential to establish persistent infections in
111			immunocompromised patients leading to the risk of developing a deleved
112			but sorious infaction
113			but serious infection.
114	In add	lition to	product related factors, the long term risk profile of a CT product should
115		alko into	consideration the target cell/tissues/organ, and the notiont population (age
110	aiso ta	ake into	consideration the target centrissues/organ, and the patient population (age,
11/	IIIIIIu	ne status	s, risk of monanty etc.), and the relevant disease characteristics.
118	р	TT! _ 4	
119	В.	Histor	·y
120	T 1		
121	The re	ecomme	ndations for LIFU monitoring in the 2006 Delayed Adverse Events
122	guidai	nce (Ref	. 1) were based on extensive discussions among gene therapy stakeholders,
123	and cu	umulativ	re preclinical and clinical experience with GT products (Refs. 3, 4, 5) as
124	summ	arized in	n this section. To discuss and solicit advice about long term risks to
125	subjec	ets expos	sed to such products, three separate meetings of the FDA advisory
126	comm	nttee, Bi	ological Response Modifiers Advisory Committee (BRMAC), were
127	conve	ened on I	November 17, 2000, April 6, 2001, and October 24, 2001 (Ref. 6).
128			

Draft – Not for Implementation

129A public workshop entitled "Long-term Follow-Up of Participants in Human Gene130Transfer Research" was also held in June 2001, in association with the annual meeting of131the American Society of Gene Therapy (ASGT). The workshop included a forum in132which invited speakers discussed the challenges associated with LTFU of subjects in133gene therapy clinical studies. The workshop organizers published a summary of the134discussion (Ref. 7).

135

143 144

145

146 147

148

149 150

151

152 153

154

155

156

157

158

168

169

170

171

136Taking these discussions into consideration, we provided detailed recommendations in137the 2006 Delayed Adverse Events guidance document on the duration and design of138LTFU observations (Ref. 1). The Agency advised sponsors to observe subjects for139delayed adverse events for as long as 15 years following exposure to the investigational140GT product, specifying that the LTFU observation was to include a minimum of five141years of annual examinations, followed by ten years of annual queries of study subjects,142either in person or by questionnaire.

Herein, we update our recommendations in the guidance taking into account the clinical experience gained since 2006 in LTFU of investigational GT products (as described in the following section), and the development of novel GT products with emerging technologies such as genome-editing that may be associated with an increased risk of delayed adverse events (as described in section III.D of this document).

C. Experience Gained Through Long Term Follow-up of Subjects in Gene Therapy Trials

To date, leukemias have been reported in more than one trial where subjects have received genetically-modified cells that were manufactured using gammaretroviral vectors (Refs. 8-11). Advances in analytical approaches for integration site analysis in patient samples collected during LTFU have provided insight into the possible mechanisms involved in the occurrence of such delayed adverse events (Refs. 8-14).

159 Past clinical experience in LTFU monitoring, and significant improvements in analytical 160 approaches to investigate the integration site have contributed greatly towards our 161 understanding of the risks associated with integrating gene therapy vectors (Ref. 15). 162 Such risks can be mitigated through improvements in vector design and the duration and 163 design of LTFU observations. Because integrating gene therapy vectors can persist in the body over the life-span of the patient's transduced cells, vectors with an improved risk 164 165 profile were desired, and have subsequently been developed for clinical use (Refs. 16, 17). These include gamma etroviral and lentiviral vectors modified: 166 167

- 1. To reduce the risk of activating host genes adjacent to the integration site (e.g., self-inactivating (SIN) vectors and vectors containing insulator sequences);
- 1722.To be less genotoxic (e.g., carrying non-viral physiological promoters to173drive the expression of the therapeutic gene); and

Draft – Not for Implementation

- 175 3. To reduce the potential for recombination, and thereby, the risk of 176 generating replication competent, pathogenic variants. 177
 - Long Term Follow-up for Novel Gene Therapy Products D.

Novel GT products developed as a result of emerging technologies, such as transposonbased gene insertion and genome editing, also raise concerns for delayed adverse events due to the unique genome modifying activity of such products. Specifically, a vector with a transposon element can insert transgenes into the host chromosome randomly by a direct "cut-and-paste" mechanism, mediated by the transposases (enzyme) activity in the product (Ref. 18). A GT product with genome editing components (nucleases) can give rise to non-specific off-target changes in the genome (Ref. 2), and may be associated with unknown and unpredictable risks for developing delayed adverse events in study subjects and patients once approved. The LTFU observations for these novel GT products should be designed to take into account product-specific characteristics, the basic and translational knowledge generated in the field, and the product-specific preclinical data generated to enable investigational new drug application (IND) studies, as described in the following section.

192 193 194

174

178

179 180

181

182

183

184 185

186

187

188

189

190

191

195

198

199 200

201

202

203

204

205

206

207

208

209

PRECLINICAL DATA USED FOR ASSESSMENT OF DELAYED RISKS IN IV. GENE THERAPY CLINICAL TRIALS 196 197

A. **Criteria to Assess Potential Delayed Risks of Gene Therapy Products**

To assess the risk of delayed adverse events for a GT product, we recommend that you use available preclinical and clinical evidence, and current information about your product and similar products based on studies that you and others have performed. In general, when the risk of delayed adverse events is low following exposure to a GT product, LTFU observations are not recommended. We consider the assessment of risk to be a continuous process; in that, as more data accumulates, we recommend that you reassess the risk to your subjects and, if appropriate, revise an existing LTFU observations or initiate a LTFU observation, if previously allowed to proceed without LTFU observations.

210 Pertinent previous preclinical and clinical experience with your product or similar products is highly relevant in the assessment of the risk for delayed adverse events. For 211 212 example, experience with GT products in the same vector class, administered by a similar 213 route, or given for the same clinical indication may contribute helpful information. 214 However, for novel products such information may not be available or pertinent, or may 215 be limited, in which case data from well-designed preclinical studies (as described in 216 section IV.B of this document) should be used in assessing the risk of delayed adverse

217

Draft – Not for Implementation

events. Primary data and information relevant to the assessment of the risk of delayed
events should be submitted in your IND along with other preclinical data (see 21 CFR
312.23(a)(8), 312.23(a)(10)(iv), and 312.42(a)(11)).

GT product knowledge is critical in assessing the level of risk for delayed adverse events
and the need for LTFU observations. To help you in this process, we refer you to section
III.A of this document, and to the series of questions in Figure 1, "Framework to Assess
the Risk of Gene Therapy-Related Delayed Adverse Events."

227 Figure 1. Framework to Assess the Risk of Gene Therapy-Related Delayed Adverse Events



² See section V. of the text for recommendations on how to perform clinical LTFU observations.

Note, that evidence from preclinical studies will help you answer questions 3 through 5 below and in Figure 1. When the risk of delayed adverse events is low based on your answers to these questions, a plan for LTFU observations may not be necessary to mitigate risks to subjects.

We suggest you use the framework in Figure 1 by answering the questions in sequence as follows:

243	Question 1: "Does your GT product utilize genome-editing technology?"
244	
245	If the answer is "no," go to Question 2. If the answer is "yes," all your clinical
246	protocols proposing administration of the GT product should include LTFU
247	observations for appropriate human subject protections (see section V. for
248	recommendations on how to perform clinical LTFU observations).
249	
250	Question 2: "Is your vector used only for <i>ex vivo</i> modification of cells?"
251	
252	If the answer is "no," go to Question 3. If the answer is "yes," go to Question 4.
253	
254	Question 3: "Do preclinical study results show persistence of the GT product?"
255	
256	If the answer is "no," the risk of product-related delayed adverse events is low,
257	and LTFU observations may not be needed. If the answer is "yes," go to
258	Question 4.
259	
260	If it is unknown whether your GT product persists, for the purpose of assessing
261	the risk of delayed adverse events, we recommend that you either assume that the
262	GT product does persist, or perform preclinical studies to assay for the GT
263	product persistence in a relevant animal species. For the design and details of
264	such preclinical studies, please refer to section IV.B of this document:
265	specifically, the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assay for determining vector
266	persistence in biodistribution studies. Following administration of the product,
267	persistence is indicated by detectable levels of GT product sequences above the
268	threshold level of the PCR assay, and absence of an apparent downward trend
269	over several time points. In contrast, persistence is unlikely if product sequences
270	cannot be detected with a sensitive assay such as PCR or if the assay for GT
271	product sequences demonstrates a downward trend over time. We encourage vou
272	to consult with the Office of Tissues and Advanced Therapies (OTAT) at the
273	Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research (CBER) for specific advice
274	regarding determination of GT product persistence and biodistribution in your test
275	system.
276	
277	Ouestion 4: "Are your vector sequences integrated or is the human genome
278	otherwise genetically altered?"
279	
280	If the answer is "no," go to Question 5. If you have evidence that suggests that
281	the product may integrate or if the product was intentionally designed to facilitate
282	integration (please refer to Table 1, section IV.C of this document): the answer is
283	"ves." If the answer is "ves." all your clinical protocols proposing administration
284	of the GT product should include LTFU observations for appropriate human
285	subject protections (see section V, for recommendations on how to perform
286	clinical LTFU observations).
287	

288	Question 5: "Does the GT product have the potential for latency and
289	reactivation?"
290	
291	If the answer is "no," the risk of product-related delayed adverse events is low,
292	and LTFU observations may not be needed. If the answer is "yes," all your
293	clinical protocols with the GT product should include LTFU observations for
294	appropriate human subject protections (see section V. for recommendations on
295	how to perform clinical LTFU observations).
296	1
297	Laboratory and preclinical evidence of a low risk of delayed adverse events following
298	exposure to a similar GT product may show that LTFU observations for your GT product
299	are not needed. When such data/information is made available for review, we can assess
300	their relevance to your product if you provide adequate details and a clear explanation of
301	similarities and differences between the two products. For additional guidance, we
302	provide the following two examples:
303	
304	• Your GT product is a plasmid, and the similar product is also a plasmid.
305	but has different coding sequences for the proposed therapeutic gene
306	product. The similar product has been used in preclinical and clinical
307	studies, administered by an identical route and in an identical final
308	formulation to that proposed in the prospective studies in your program. In
309	this case, reference to a published study demonstrating lack of persistence
310	of the vector sequence for the similar (plasmid) product may adequately
311	address concerns regarding the persistence of the proposed vector (vour
312	plasmid).
313	1 /
314	• Your GT product and the similar product differ only with respect to route
315	of administration. The similar product was administered into tumors
316	(intratumorally). Your GT product is to be administered intravenously.
317	There is a published study demonstrating the lack of persistence of the
318	similar product when administered intratumorally. In this case, the data is
319	not sufficiently relevant to the GT product under study, since there was no
320	intended systemic exposure to the product. Thus, there is insufficient
321	similarity to conclude that LTFU observations are not necessary in your
322	proposed study to mitigate the long term risks to subjects. In the absence
323	of relevant data from a study involving a similar product, we recommend
324	that you assess the risk of product persistence in a preclinical study with
325	the proposed GT product administered by the intravenous route.
326	
327	If you believe you have evidence from studies on a similar product that is adequate to
328	support conclusions that either the GT product is unlikely to persist in human hosts, or
329	the vector sequence does not integrate into the human genome and the GT product does
330	not have the potential for latency and reactivation, you may decide to submit a clinical
331	protocol that does not provide for LTFU observations. We will review such submissions
332	and, if based upon our review of your submission or other additional information, we

Draft – Not for Implementation

333 conclude that LTFU observations for delayed adverse events are necessary to mitigate 334 long term risks, and that without LTFU observations, the study presents an unreasonable 335 and significant risk to study subjects, we may place your study on clinical hold (21 CFR 336 312.42(b)(1)(i) and 312.42(b)(2)(i)). 337 338 We provide the following examples of evidence obtained from investigation of a product 339 that may warrant our recommendation of LTFU observations for delayed adverse events: 340 341 A preclinical toxicology study indicates that expression of the therapeutic • 342 gene (the transgene in your product) is associated with delayed toxicity. 343 344 The therapeutic gene provides functional replacement of a host gene that • 345 is otherwise not expressed, and the therapeutic protein is potentially 346 immunogenic. 347 348 Data collected in a clinical study with your GT product indicates product 349 persistence, even though data from your preclinical studies suggested that 350 the product did not persist. 351 352 Data collected in a clinical study with your GT product identifies an • 353 increased risk of delayed adverse events. 354 355 B. **Considerations for Preclinical Study Design to Assess Biodistribution and** 356 **Persistence of Gene Therapy Product** 357 358 As discussed in section III.A of this document, product persistence heightens the risk of 359 delayed adverse events following exposure to the GT product. Indeed, the longer the GT 360 product persists, the greater the duration and degree of risk of delayed adverse events. 361 We recommend that you perform preclinical biodistribution studies using methods shown 362 to be sensitive and quantitative to detect product sequences. Such studies would be designed to determine the distribution of your product in non-target tissues and the 363 364 persistence of the product in both non-target and target tissues following direct in vivo 365 administration of the product. If possible and applicable, we recommend that the studies 366 employ an animal species that permits vector transduction and/or vector replication and 367 that the animal species be biologically responsive to the specific transgene of interest or 368 to therapeutic components in the product (e.g., for products that may not contain 369 transgenes and only genome editing components) (Ref. 19). The duration of the 370 preclinical studies will vary, depending on the animal model employed. Projections of 371 delayed adverse reactions in human subjects may be derived from assessment of data 372 from appropriate long term observational studies in animals, when such observational 373 studies are possible. 374 375 A biodistribution study in animals can be performed either as a separate study or as a 376 component of a toxicology study. Consider the following points in your animal study 377 design to permit evaluation of GT product localization and persistence (Ref. 20).

378			
379	1.	Anima	l Study Design
380			
381		a.	Use the GT product in the final formulation proposed for the
382			clinical study because changes in the final formulation may alter
383			biodistribution pattern.
384		b.	Use both genders or justify the use of a single gender.
385		c.	Use at least 5 animals per gender per group per sacrifice time point
386			for rodents, and between 3-5 animals per gender per group per
387			sacrifice time point for non-rodents.
388		d.	Consider factors in the study design that might influence or
389			compromise the GT product distribution and/or persistence such as
390			the animal's age and physiologic condition
391		e	Use the intended clinical route of GT product administration, if
392		0.	possible
393		f	Assess GT product biodistribution in a vehicle control group and a
394			group of animals that receives the maximum feasible dose (MFD)
395			or clinically relevant dose (defined in section VIII). Studies at
396			additional dose levels might provide information on dose-
397			dependent effects of your product.
398		σ	Include appropriate safety endpoints in your biodistribution study
399		8.	to assess any potential correlation between product
400			presence/persistence and adverse findings if safety endpoints have
401			not been evaluated already in a separate toxicology study using the
402			same animal model. These safety endpoints should include clinical
403			observations body weights clinical pathology gross organ
404			nathology, and historiathology.
405		h	Include several sacrifice intervals to characterize the kinetics of
406			GT product distribution and persistence. We recommend sacrifice
407			of animals at the expected time of peak GT product detection and
408			at several later time points to evaluate clearance of product
409			sequences from tissues
410			sequences from ussues.
411	2	Tissue	Collection and Analysis
412		110000	
413		a	Sample and analyze the following panel of tissues, at a minimum:
414			blood injection site(s) gonads brain liver kidneys lung heart
415			and spleen. Consider other tissues for evaluation depending on
416			the product, vector type and tropism, and transgene(s), as well as
417			the route of administration (e.g., draining lymph nodes and
418			contralateral sites for subcutaneous/intramuscular injection, hone
419			marrow, eves, etc.).
420		b.	Choose a method for tissue collection that avoids the potential for
421			cross contamination among different tissue samples.

422			с.	Use a qua	antitative, sensitive assay like PCR assay to analyze the
423				samples f	for vector sequences. You should submit data to your
424				IND to de	emonstrate that your assay methodology is capable of
425				specifical	lly detecting vector sequence in both animal and human
426				tissues. V	We recognize that analytical technologies are constantly
427				changing	, and encourage you to discuss the assay methodology
428				with us b	efore initiating sample analysis. Our current PCR
429				recomme	ndations include the following:
430					C C
431				<i>i</i> . T	he assay should have a demonstrated limit of quantitation
432				of	f < 50 copies of product per 1 µg genomic DNA, so that
433				yo	our assay can detect this limit with 95% confidence.
434				ii. Y	ou should use a minimum of three samples per tissue.
435				0	ne sample of each tissue should include a spike of control
436				D	NA, including a known amount of the vector sequences,
437				to	assess the adequacy of the PCR assay reaction. The
438				st	bike control will determine the specified PCR assay
439				se	ensitivity.
440				iii. Y	ou should provide a rationale for the number of replicates
441				fc	or testing per tissue, taking into account the size of the
442				Sa	imple relative to the tissue you are testing.
443					
444		3.	Other (Considerat	tions
445					
446			There a	re many v	variables that will affect the outcome and interpretation of
447			the in v	vivo assess	sment of each GT product type. Hence, we encourage you
448			to discu	uss with C	OTAT the study design for your GT product before
449			initiatii	ng the pre	clinical biodistribution study to ensure that both
450			biodist	ribution a	nd persistence will be adequately assessed ³ .
451					
452	C.	Vector	r Persist	tence, Int	egration, Reactivation and Genome Modification:
453		Assess	ing Lor	ig Term l	Risks
454			C	0	
455	GT pro	oducts n	nay or n	nay not us	e technologies that modify the host genome. For products
456	that do	, such a	s integra	ating vect	ors (gammaretrovirus, lentivirus, foamy virus etc.),
457	herpes	virus ca	pable of	f latency-1	reactivation, and genome editing products (as described
458	under	sections	III.A a	nd III.D o	f this document, respectively), there is the risk of delayed
459					- · ·

³ The preclinical program for any investigational product should be individualized with respect to scope, complexity, and overall design, to maximize the contribution and predictive value of the resulting data for clinical safety and therapeutic activity. We encourage sponsors to explore opportunities for reducing, refining, and replacing animal use in the preclinical program. For example, it may be appropriate to use *in vitro* or *in silico* testing to complement replace animal studies. Sponsors are encouraged to submit proposals and justify any potential alternative approaches, which we will evaluate for equivalency to animal studies.

460	adverse events	Accordingly, as depicted in Table 1 of this document and in the answer					
461	to Question 4 in Figure 1, it is important to conduct LTFU observations to mitigate						
462	delayed risks to subjects receiving GT products with integrating activity.						
463	•						
464	We are aware that the potential of vectors to integrate may be modified to increase their						
465	utility as gene	utility as gene therapy agents: for example, a vector can be modified to induce integration					
466	of its DNA (R	efs. 21-24). Another example would be changes in the methods used to					
467	introduce plas	mid DNA vectors into cells that result in higher integration frequencies					
468	(Ref. 25). In t	hose cases where a modification of the GT product may have altered its					
469	persistence or	integration properties, we recommend that you submit data to your IND					
470	from preclinic	al studies to assess vector persistence in an appropriate model and take one					
471	of the followir	or actions.					
472	or the rono wi						
472	1	If the vector is not persistent, the predicted risk of delayed adverse events					
473	1.	would appear to be low in which case I TEU observations may not be					
475		needed					
475		lieeded.					
470	2	If the vector is persistent, we recommend that you perform prealinical					
4//	Ζ.	if the vector is persistent, we recommend that you perform precimical studies to assess vector integration, as well as the potential for vector					
470		latency and reactivation					
4/9							
480	2	If the stadion of some social and for a social and the table of the					
481	3.	If the studies show no evidence for persistence due to integration of the					
482		genetic material or development of latency, the predicted risk of delayed					
483		adverse events would be low. LIFU observations may not be needed.					
484	4						
485	4.	If the studies show no evidence for integration of the genetic material but					
486		studies for latency and reactivation are inconclusive, cannot be performed,					
487		or show evidence of latency and/or reactivation, the predicted risk of					
488		delayed adverse events is indeterminate. LTFU observations may be					
489		recommended for human subject protections.					
490							
491	5.	If preclinical studies of vector integration are not feasible, if the					
492		therapeutic gene/genetic material integrates, or if the vector is shown to					
493		persist in a latent state that may be reactivated, the risk of delayed adverse					
494		events is high or unknown, and LTFU observations in study subjects are					
495		recommended for human subject protection.					
496							
497	6.	If vector integration studies are not performed, we recommend that you					
498		provide other evidence to support an assessment that your product does					
499		not pose high risks of delayed adverse events, including the following:					
500							
501		a. A discussion of why vector integration studies were not performed.					
502		b. The evidence supporting your assessment of the risk of delayed					
503		adverse events posed by your product.					
504							

505	As stated in section IV.B.3 of this document, we encourage you to discuss with FDA
506	your study design before starting the trial.
507	
508	GT products that are based on vectors such as plasmids, poxvirus, adenovirus, and adeno-
509	associated virus vectors (AAV) that do not have a propensity to integrate or reactivate
510	following latency, generally present a lower risk of delayed adverse events. Clinical data
511	from LTFU observations of subjects that have received plasmids, poxvirus, adenovirus,
512	and AAV in trials conducted since 2006, further supports the assessment of lower risk for
513	these GT products. However, vector or product-specific modifications may alter the risk
514	profile of products that are currently considered lower risk, for example a plasmid that is
515	modified to carry genome editing components. Conversely, gene therapy vectors
516	currently considered to pose delayed risks might be modified in order to reduce those
517	risks. Hence, data supporting decreased or increased risk for delayed adverse events with
518	novel GT products or vector types could provide the basis for sponsors to reassess our
519	recommendations for performing LTFU observations. We encourage you to consult with
520	OTAT regarding a reassessment of our recommendations for performing LTFU
521	observations.
522	

Draft – Not for Implementation

523 Table 1. Propensity of Commonly Used Gene Therapy Products/Vectors to Modify the **Host Genome** 524

525

Product/Vector Type	Propensity to Modify Genome ¹	Long Term Follow-up Observations ²
Plasmid	No	No
RNA	No	No
Poxvirus	No	No
Adenovirus	No	No
Adeno- associated virus ³	No	Product specific (2-5 years)
Herpesvirus	No, but may undergo latency/reactivation	Yes
Gammaretrovirus	Yes	Yes
Lentivirus	Yes	Yes
Transposon elements	Yes	Product specific
Microbial vectors for gene therapy (MVGT) ⁴	No, but may persist and undergo reactivation	Product specific
Genome editing products	Yes; permanent changes to the host genome	Yes

526 ¹Based on product design (i.e., lack of any known mechanism to facilitate integration or genome editing), as well as

527 cumulative preclinical and clinical evidence suggesting that a GT product does not integrate into or edit the genome 528 529 or integrates in/modifies the genome at very low frequencies.

² Specific circumstances that indicate persistent expression of the transgene, in the absence of integration or genome 530 editing, may be the basis for a conclusion that LTFU observations are recommended to mitigate long term risks to

531 subjects receiving these vectors. This would depend on additional criteria, such as the transgene expressed or

532 clinical indication, as described in this section.

533 ³Replication-negative vectors only.

534 ⁴ For additional guidance we refer you to "Recommendations for Microbial Vectors used for Gene Therapy;

535 Guidance for Industry" dated September 2016,

536 https://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/CellularandG 537 eneTherapy/default.htm.

538

Draft – Not for Implementation

540D.Considerations for Preclinical Evaluation of Products that Involve Genome541Editing

543 Genome editing, whether *ex vivo* or *in vivo*, introduces the risk for delayed adverse 544 effects, due to 1) the permanent nature of change; 2) the potential for off-target genome 545 modifications that can lead to aberrant gene expression, chromosomal translocation, induce malignancies, etc.; 3) the risk for insertional mutagenesis when integrating vectors 546 547 are used to deliver the genome editing components, and the associated risk of 548 tumorigenicity; and/or 4) the possibility of an immune response to the genome-editing 549 components or the expressed transgene. Preclinical safety evaluation of genome editing 550 products should consider: 1) the technology used to edit the genome; 2) the cell type that 551 is modified *ex vivo*; 3) the vector used to deliver the genome-editing components; and 4) 552 the clinical route of administration. Preclinical studies evaluating these factors can 553 inform the scope of the clinical LTFU observations.

For guidance on the biodistribution studies when considering the vector type in the genome edited product, and the related long term risks with integrating vectors, we refer you to sections IV.B and IV.C of this document.

557 558 559

562

554 555

556

539

542

560V.RECOMMENDATIONS FOR PROTOCOLS FOR LONG TERM FOLLOW-UP561OBSERVATIONS: CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS

In this section, we recommend elements appropriate to the design and conduct of LTFU
observations for delayed adverse events in study subjects receiving investigational GT products.
Typically, LTFU observations are conducted under a protocol (LTFU protocol) that is separate
from the main study protocol, and may begin immediately after the main study protocol ends.

567 568

A. Goals of the Long Term Follow-up Observations

569 570 The objective of LTFU observations in clinical development of a GT product is to 571 identify and mitigate the long term risks to the patients receiving the GT product. The 572 LTFU protocol for GT trials is primarily designed to capture delayed adverse events in 573 study subjects as well as to understand the persistence of the GT product. As a sponsor, 574 you may consider designing the LTFU protocol to assess the long term clinical efficacy, 575 and durability of your product. For additional guidance on trial design for GT products 576 we refer you to FDA's guidance document "Considerations for the Design of Early-Phase 577 Clinical Trials of Cellular and Gene Therapy Products; Guidance for Industry" dated 578 August 2015 (Ref. 26). Please refer to Appendix 1 of this document for a LTFU Annual 579 Report Template.

580 581

Draft – Not for Implementation

582 **B.** Clinical Trial Populations for Long Term Follow-up Observations

584 When a GT product is deemed to pose a risk for delayed adverse events (based on the 585 recommendations/discussions provided under sections III and IV of this document) and a 586 decision to perform LTFU observations is made, all study subjects who receive the GT 587 product are expected to be enrolled in the LTFU protocol after signing an informed 588 consent document. LTFU observations may have reduced utility in assessing and 589 mitigating subject risk when the population selected for the trial has characteristics that 590 could confound the observation of the delayed adverse events, such as short life 591 expectancy, multiple co-morbidities, and exposure to other agents such as radiation or 592 chemotherapy. In contrast, LTFU observations could have greater value in assessing and 593 mitigating the risks to subjects who have limited disease or are disease-free, and who 594 have few co-morbidities and limited exposures to other agents with potential for delayed 595 adverse events. Hence, characteristics of the patient population and the disease to be 596 treated should be considered when designing a LTFU protocol.

597 598

599 600

601

602

603

604

605

606 607

608

609

610

611

612

613 614

615

616

620

621 622

623 624

583

C. Duration of Long Term Follow-up Observations

It is important that the design of LTFU observations be appropriate to detect potential gene therapy-related delayed adverse events in the study subjects enrolled in your clinical studies. The duration of LTFU should be sufficient to observe the subjects for risks that may be due to the characteristics of the product, the nature of the exposure, and the anticipated time of occurrence of delayed adverse events. Elements that will influence the determination of the duration of LTFU observations include the following:

- The observed duration of *in vivo* product persistence.
 - The observed duration of transgene expression.
 - Product characteristics *in vivo*.
 - Route of administration.
 - The expected survival rates and the known background rates of the events of interest occurring in the study population.
 - Other factors that may be relevant to the feasibility and scientific value of conducting LTFU observations; for example, the durability of the clinical effect.

617 In general, our current recommendations for the duration of a LTFU protocol based on
618 product type are as follows:
619

- Fifteen years for integrating vectors such as gammaretroviral and lentiviral vectors and transposon elements.
- Up to fifteen years for genome editing products.
- Up to five years for AAV vectors.
| 625 | Additionally, a risk-based approach for determining the duration of a LTFU protocol may | | | | |
|-----|---|--|--|--|--|
| 626 | be considered for vectors capable of latency (e.g., Herpesvirus) or long term expression | | | | |
| 627 | without integration (e.g., AAV). | | | | |
| 628 | | | | | |
| 629 | Although these recommendations are broadly based on GT product type, you should also | | | | |
| 630 | consider the elements listed above, in this section, as it applies to your GT product, | | | | |
| 631 | disease characteristics, and the patient population, in addition to the discussions in | | | | |
| 632 | sections III. and IV. of this document. | | | | |
| 633 | | | | | |
| 634 | To reduce the unnecessary burden to study subjects and to you as the study sponsor it | | | | |
| 635 | may be appropriate to modify the duration of the I TEU observation based on your | | | | |
| 636 | ongoing assessment of product persistence, transgene expression, and clinical findings. If | | | | |
| 637 | you intend to modify the duration of the follow-up, you may submit an amendment to | | | | |
| 638 | your IND justifying the change to your LTFU protocol, and communicate with FDA to | | | | |
| 639 | reach a final decision (we refer you to section V, of this document for additional guidance | | | | |
| 640 | regarding amendments to the clinical protocol) | | | | |
| 641 | regarding anonaments to the entitlear protocol). | | | | |
| 642 | D. Elements of Long Term Follow-up Observations | | | | |
| 643 | | | | | |
| 644 | We recommend that at least the following general elements be part of the LTFU protocol: | | | | |
| 645 | | | | | |
| 646 | • You should establish a dedicated clinical LTEU protocol detailing patient | | | | |
| 647 | visit schedules, sampling plan (for patient test samples, such as blood) | | | | |
| 648 | methods of monitoring tests and clinical events of interest that will be | | | | |
| 649 | monitored over the entire LTFU observation. | | | | |
| 650 | | | | | |
| 651 | • The investigator is required to prepare and maintain adequate and accurate | | | | |
| 652 | case histories that record all observations and other data pertinent to the | | | | |
| 653 | investigation on each subject administered the investigational drug or | | | | |
| 654 | employed as a control in the investigation (see 21 CFR 312 62(b)). These | | | | |
| 655 | records would include a baseline history prior to exposure to the | | | | |
| 656 | investigational product in which all diseases conditions and physical | | | | |
| 657 | abnormalities are recorded. A template for health care providers (HCPs) | | | | |
| 658 | who are not investigators or sub-investigators (for example, the subject's | | | | |
| 659 | nhysician nhysician assistant or nurse practitioner) to use in recording | | | | |
| 660 | and reporting such observations to the investigator may be helpful for such | | | | |
| 661 | HCPs Case histories should also include information from scheduled | | | | |
| 662 | visits with a HCP and test results for persistent vector sequences. The use | | | | |
| 663 | of surrogate tests may be necessary to indicate vector persistence if direct | | | | |
| 664 | sequence testing involves an invasive procedure for the subject. If | | | | |
| 665 | surrogate tests are considered, we recommend that you consult with FDA | | | | |
| 666 | regarding the types and characteristics of the surrogate tests you intend to | | | | |
| 667 | use before including them in your study | | | | |
| 668 | use before meruding them in your study. | | | | |
| 000 | | | | | |

669	In addition, for the first five years or more (as applicable to your product), we
670	recommend that you do the following:
671	
672	• Assure that investigators maintain, in the case history, a detailed record of
673	exposures to mutagenic agents and other medicinal products, and have
674	ready access to information about their adverse event profiles.
675	• Establish a method for investigators to record the emergence of new
676	clinical conditions, including, but not limited to:
677	- New malignancy(ies)
678	- New incidence or exacerbation of a pre-existing neurologic
679	disorder
680	- New incidence or exacerbation of a prior rheumatologic or other
681	autoimmune disorder
682	- New incidence of a hematologic disorder.
683	
684	• Design a plan for scheduled visits with an HCP to elicit and record new
685	findings for each study subject, including history, physical examination, or
686	laboratory testing.
687	
688	• Such a plan needs to facilitate reporting of delayed adverse events,
689	including unexpected illness and hospitalization by study subjects and
690	HCPs.
691	
692	For the subsequent ten years (applicable to products for which such length LTFU is
693	needed), at a minimum, we recommend that you ensure that your investigators:
694	
695	• Contact subjects at a minimum of once a year. At your discretion, unless
696	the LTFU protocol provides for additional specific screening, you may
697	arrange to contact subjects by telephone or written questionnaire rather
698	than by office visits with an HCP.
699	
700	• Continue appropriate follow-up methods as indicated by previous test
701	results. For example, it would be appropriate to monitor for vector
702	sequences in subjects who had previous test results demonstrating vector
703	persistence.
704	
705	Perform all LTFU observations according to FDA regulations governing clinical trials
706	(Ref. 27).
707	
708	

709	We provide additional specific recommendations and requirements for data collection,				
710	recording, and	, and reporting of adverse events for LTFU observations as follows:			
711	0				
712	1.	Detection of Adverse Events and Coordination of Data Collection			
713					
714		a. To facilitate detection of delayed adverse events, we recommend			
715		that the LTFU protocol identify suitable HCPs whose observations			
716		would be used in the assessment of the occurrence of adverse			
717		events in the study population. Suitable HCP might include			
718		physicians, physician's assistants, and nurse practitioners who			
719		were not otherwise associated with the clinical trial. You may			
720		arrange to have such individuals notified to provide prompt reports			
721		of adverse events to the investigators.			
722		8			
723		b. To increase subject compliance and improve the quality of data			
724		collection, we suggest that you encourage study subjects to be			
725		proactive in reporting adverse events. Tools that study subjects			
726		could use to report events to the investigator include subjects			
727		of health-related events, informational brochures, and laminated			
728		wallet-sized cards with investigator contact information			
729		Wallet Sized curds Will Investigator contact information.			
730		c. To determine the causality of potential related adverse events (such			
731		as tumor formation) associated with your GT product, you should			
732		propose a clinical program for follow-up procedures. Such a			
733		program would lay out the efforts that would be needed among the			
734		study subjects HCPs investigators and the sponsor for study			
735		coordination This includes the collection of tissue samples for			
736		follow-up analysis obtaining informed consent for a biopsy or			
737		autopsy (see section V.E. of this document), communicating with			
738		the study subject, and preserving and analyzing the tissues/samples			
739		according to the LTFU protocol You may propose specific tests			
740		to enable causality analyses such as general blood work			
741		cytogenetic and histological analysis PCR HLA typing or deep			
742		sequencing			
743		sequencing.			
744	2	IND Safety Reports			
745	2.	nob surery reports			
746		You must follow applicable reporting requirements outlined in 21 CFR			
747		312 32 for adverse events associated with the use of the investigational			
748		product As the LTEU observations proceed you must notify FDA and			
749		each participating investigator of any serious and unexpected suspected			
750		adverse reaction (21 CFR 312 32(c)(1)(i)) and findings from other studies			
751		(21 CFR 312 32(c)(1)(ii)) In each IND Safety Report (required to be			
752		provided to investigators and FDA) you must identify all safety reports			
753		previously filed concerning a similar adverse finding and analyze the			
100		providusty med concerning a similar adverse midning, and analyze the			

754 755 756 757 758 759 760 761 762 762		significance of the adverse finding in light of the previous, similar reports (21 CFR 312.32(c)(1)). You must promptly investigate all safety information you receive (21 CFR 312.32(d)(1)). If the relationship of the adverse event to the GT product is uncertain, additional investigations may be needed. You must also revise your informed consent document and Investigator Brochure to include the new adverse event(s) that may be associated with the product or study procedures (21 CFR Part 50, 21 CFR 312.55(b)). You must inform all clinical investigators of the newly identified risk (21 CFR 312.32(c)(1)).
703	2	Annual Departs to the DID/Common Information
764	3.	Annual Reports to the IND/Summary Information
765		
766		While the IND is in effect and LTFU observations are ongoing, you must
767		file an annual report. It is recommended that the annual report contain a
768		subtitle for Long Term Follow-Up (See Appendix 1 of this document). In
769		that report, you should submit information obtained during the previous
770		year's clinical and nonclinical investigations, including, a summary of all
771		IND safety reports submitted during the past year, and a narrative or
772		tabular summary showing the most frequent and most serious adverse
773		experiences by body system (21 CFR 312.33(b)(1) and (2)). If adverse
774		reactions are reported and determined to be related to your product or
775		delivery procedure, you should provide causal analyses based on evidence
776		from clinical, laboratory, molecular, cytogenetic, histological, or HLA
777		analysis, or deep sequencing data. In lieu of annual reports, you may
778		submit a Development Safety Update Report (DSUR). In this case, you
779		should provide the LTFU information in a subsection with a subtitle for
780		LTFU in your DSUR report (Ref. 28).
781		
782	4.	Amendments to the Clinical Protocol
783		
784		If clinical data suggest that your GT product is not associated with delayed
785		risks or there is no evidence of vector persistence, you may want to
786		consider revising the clinical protocol regarding LTEU of study subjects
787		However, before implementation of this change, we recommend that you
788		consult with FDA and provide your rationale with supporting clinical and
780		laboratory data (we refer you to section V C of this document for
700		additional guidance). You must submit to EDA a protocol amendment to
790		your IND indicating the relevant changes (21 CEP 312 30(b)(1) (d) and
791		your IND indicating the relevant changes $(21 \text{ CFK } 512.50(0)(1), (0), and (a))$
792		(C)).
795	5	Schoduled Dhysical Examinations
705	5.	Scheuuleu Physical Examinations
17J 706		We recommend that I TELL abcomptions in shade ask delta de tracis 1
190 707		we recommend that LIFU observations include scheduled physical
/9/		examinations performed by a HCP once a year during the first five years
/98		(or until the completion of LIFU if the LIFU is less than five years),

Draft – Not for Implementation

799	unless the assessed risks associated with your GT product indicate that
800	they should be done more frequently. For example, if a subject exposed to
801	your GT product develops a rapidly progressive, potentially reversible
802	delayed adverse event, and there is a reasonable possibility that the event
803	may have been caused by the product, it may then become advisable to
804	perform observations on a semi-annual or quarterly basis. Such periodic
805	evaluation should include a brief history and focused examination
806	designed to determine whether there is any evidence of emergence of
807	clinically important adverse events. Appropriate laboratory evaluations.
808	such as a hematology profile, should be included with the periodic
809	physical examination LTFU observations are intended to collect data on
810	delayed adverse events related to the GT product, and are not intended to
811	provide evaluation or treatment data for the underlying disease
812	provide evaluation of treatment data for the underlying disease.
813	6 GT Product Persistence
814	
815	During I TEU observations, we recommend that you test study subjects at
816	least annually for persistent vector sequences until they become
817	undetectable More frequent testing may be necessary as outlined in
818	section V G of this document. The assay should be sufficiently sensitive
819	to detect vector sequences. We recommend that you sample the likely
820	population of transduced cells without being overly invasive (e.g.
820	perinheral blood is a suitable sample to test for presence of hematopoietic
822	stem cells, rather than hone marrow bionsy). In those cases where
822	collecting the transduced cell population may involve an invasive
824	procedure, we recommend that you consider instead measuring a
825	surrogate that may indicate vector persistence (e.g. the level of transgene
826	product or some clinical effect). Data demonstrating the lack of detectable
820	vector may provide a rationale to revise the LTEU protocol as a protocol
828	amendment to your IND. In any such protocol amendment include an
820	assessment of risks associated with your GT product and an evaluation of
830	the impact of the waning persistence of the vector on those risks (21 CFR
831	(21 Cr K)
832	512.50(0) and $(0)(2)$.
833	F Informed Consent in Trials Involving Long Term Follow up Observations
834	E. Informed Consent in Trials involving Long Term Fonow-up Observations
835	Each subject in a clinical investigation must be provided with a description of any
836	reasonably foreseeable risks from participating in the investigation (21 CEP 50.25(a)(2))
830	The informed consent document must describe among other things, the purposes of the
838	research the expected duration of the subject's participation and the procedures to be
830	followed (21 CER 50.25(a)(1)) Accordingly the informed consent document must
840	explain the purpose and duration of I TEU observations, the time intervals, and the
8/11	locations at which you plan to request the subjects to have scheduled study visits or be
0-11	iocations at which you plan to request the subjects to have scheduled study visits of De

locations at which you plan to request the subjects to have scheduled study visits or be contacted by other means, and details as to what those contacts will involve (21 CFR 50.25).

842

845 When appropriate, the informed consent document must be updated to describe any 846 adverse reactions that may be associated with the product from your trial or other hum 847 or animal (preclinical) studies (21 CFR 50.25(b)(5)). If the sponsor intends to store b 848 or tissue samples for future testing, the informed consent document must convey this 849 information (21 CFR 50.25(a)(1)). The informed consent should also convey that an 850 autopsy may be requested to test vector persistence, transgene expression, and related 851 adverse reactions at the molecular, cellular or tissue level if there are deaths during the 852 LTFU observation. Sponsors must ensure that investigators submit the informed cons 853 documents for Institutional Review Board approval (21 CFR 312 53(c)(1)(vi)(d))	an lood			
adverse reactions that may be associated with the product from your trial or other hun or animal (preclinical) studies (21 CFR 50.25(b)(5)). If the sponsor intends to store b or tissue samples for future testing, the informed consent document must convey this information (21 CFR 50.25(a)(1)). The informed consent should also convey that an autopsy may be requested to test vector persistence, transgene expression, and related adverse reactions at the molecular, cellular or tissue level if there are deaths during the LTFU observation. Sponsors must ensure that investigators submit the informed conse documents for Institutional Review Board approval (21 CFR 312 53(c)(1)(vi)(d))	an cood ent			
 or animal (preclinical) studies (21 CFR 50.25(b)(5)). If the sponsor intends to store b or tissue samples for future testing, the informed consent document must convey this information (21 CFR 50.25(a)(1)). The informed consent should also convey that an autopsy may be requested to test vector persistence, transgene expression, and related adverse reactions at the molecular, cellular or tissue level if there are deaths during the LTFU observation. Sponsors must ensure that investigators submit the informed consent documents for Institutional Review Board approval (21 CFR 312 53(c)(1)(vi)(d)) 	lood ent			
848 or tissue samples for future testing, the informed consent document must convey this 849 information (21 CFR 50.25(a)(1)). The informed consent should also convey that an 850 autopsy may be requested to test vector persistence, transgene expression, and related 851 adverse reactions at the molecular, cellular or tissue level if there are deaths during the 852 LTFU observation. Sponsors must ensure that investigators submit the informed cons 853 documents for Institutional Review Board approval (21 CFR 312 53(c)(1)(vi)(d))	ent			
 information (21 CFR 50.25(a)(1)). The informed consent should also convey that an autopsy may be requested to test vector persistence, transgene expression, and related adverse reactions at the molecular, cellular or tissue level if there are deaths during the LTFU observation. Sponsors must ensure that investigators submit the informed cons documents for Institutional Review Board approval (21 CFR 312 53(c)(1)(vi)(d)) 	ent			
 autopsy may be requested to test vector persistence, transgene expression, and related adverse reactions at the molecular, cellular or tissue level if there are deaths during the LTFU observation. Sponsors must ensure that investigators submit the informed cons documents for Institutional Review Board approval (21 CER 312 53(c)(1)(vi)(d)) 	ent			
 adverse reactions at the molecular, cellular or tissue level if there are deaths during the LTFU observation. Sponsors must ensure that investigators submit the informed cons documents for Institutional Review Board approval (21 CFR 312 53(c)(1)(vi)(d)) 	ent			
852 LTFU observation. Sponsors must ensure that investigators submit the informed cons 853 documents for Institutional Review Board approval (21 CFR 312 53(c)(1)(vi)(d))	ent			
853 documents for Institutional Review Board approval (21 CFR 312 53(c)(1)(vi)(d))				
355 355 355 355 355 356 151 150 100				
854				
855 We provide additional informed consent recommendations for retroviral vectors in				
856 section V.G.3 of this document.				
857				
858 F. Special Considerations Regarding Integrating Vectors				
859				
860 The recommendations in this section apply exclusively to subjects in clinical trials wh	0			
861 received GT products that are integrating vectors, such as transposon elements.	0			
862 gammaretroviral, lentiviral, other retroviral vectors or GT products that are cells modi	fied			
863 <i>ex vivo</i> by integrating vectors or transposon-based vectors. See section VI, for post				
864 licensure considerations. Because of the risk of developing leukemias and premalignation	int			
865 conditions (clonal cell expansion) due to integration of gammaretroviral vectors and	conditions (clonal cell expansion) due to integration of gammaretroviral vectors and			
866 lentiviral vectors (as described in sections III.B and III.C of this document), we are al-	50			
867 providing additional recommendations (as listed below) for collection of data in studie	ès			
868 in which subjects are exposed to integrating vectors.	in which subjects are exposed to integrating vectors.			
869				
870 1. Data Collection				
871				
We recommend that you perform assays to assess the pattern of vector				
873 integration sites in relevant surrogate cells (e.g., determine whether cel	ls			
874 carrying integrated vector sequences are polyclonal, oligoclonal, or				
875 monoclonal, with respect to vector integration patterns). We consider	an			
876 assessment of the vector integration pattern to be relevant in subjects in	1			
877 gene therapy clinical trials involving integrating vectors when: (1) the	gene therapy clinical trials involving integrating vectors when: (1) the			
878 target cells are known to have a high replicative capacity and long	target cells are known to have a high replicative capacity and long			
879 survival, and (2) a suitable surrogate is accessible for assay. For exam	survival, and (2) a suitable surrogate is accessible for assay. For example.			
880 hematopoietic stem cells have a high replicative capacity and long	hematopoietic stem cells have a high replicative capacity and long			
881 survival: peripheral blood could serve as a surrogate for testing for vec	or			
882 persistence if hematopoietic stem cells are the target of your gene thera	DV.			
883 In those cases where peripheral blood is the surrogate, analyses on puri	fied			
884 subsets of hematopoietic cells (e.g., lymphocytes vs. granulocytes) may	y be			
885 performed, if deemed appropriate to the study. As an alternative exam	ple.			
if the integrating vector is used for <i>in vivo</i> transduction of liver	. /			
887 hepatocytes, you may not need to perform this analysis, since terminal	y			
888 differentiated hepatocytes are non-dividing cells under normal	-			

Draft – Not for Implementation

circumstances, and there is no reasonable surrogate that allows for noninvasive testing of vector persistence. Please refer to the following recommendations for developing methods and plans for performing these analyses.

a. The choice of method to assess the pattern of vector integration sites should be based upon data with appropriate positive and negative controls (i.e., target cells with a known number and sites of vector copies integrated vs. target cells with no vector integrants). Studies should be performed to provide information about the assay sensitivity, specificity, and reproducibility.
b. We recommend that you perform an analysis to assess the pattern of vector integration sites if at least 1% cells in the surrogate sample are positive for vector sequences by PCR. As an alternative, you may base the decision to analyze for clonality of vector integration sites on an evaluation of the sensitivity of the assay system used to detect clonality.

c. We recommend that you test for vector sequences by PCR in subject surrogate samples obtained at intervals of no greater than six months for the first five years and then no greater than yearly for the next ten years, or until such time that no vector sequences are detectable in the surrogate sample.

d. We recommend that you perform an analysis to determine the site of vector integration if the analysis of a subject's surrogate cells suggests a predominant clone (e.g., oligoclonal pattern of vector insertions) or monoclonality. In addition, if you detect a predominant integration site, test for persistence by performing another analysis for clonality no more than three months later.

e. When the nucleotide sequence adjacent to the site of the vector integration has been determined, we recommend that you compare the identified integration site sequence with known human sequences in the human genome database and other databases that document oncogenes to determine whether the identified sequences are known to be associated with any human cancers.

f. While we recognize that oligoclonality or even monoclonality itself will not a priori result in a malignancy (Refs. 29, 30), we also recognize that these changes increase the risk of a malignancy, and therefore, we recommend that you institute a plan to monitor the subject closely for signs of malignancy if any of the following conditions pertain:

021		. Development an en e el e a el itra		
931		<i>i.</i> Persistent monocionality,		
932		<i>n</i> . Cional expansion (e.g., the percent cens positive for a		
933		particular vector integration site is snown to increase over		
934		multiple time points); or		
935		<i>iii.</i> Evidence of vector integration near or within a locus		
936		known to have oncogenic activity.		
937				
938	g.	To screen for specific disease entities, we recommend that you use		
939		established methods and/or seek advice from clinicians with		
940		expertise in screening for the health care risks to which, according		
941		to your evidence, your subjects may be exposed.		
942				
943	For retroviral (e.g., g	ammaretroviral and lentiviral) vector-based GT products, additional		
944	follow-up monitoring	g for the presence of replication competent retrovirus (RCR) may be		
945	necessary. For detail	s regarding duration of the follow-up monitoring for RCR and		
946	methods, please refer	to the document "Testing of Retroviral-Based Human Gene		
947	Therapy Product for	Replication Competent Retrovirus During Product Manufacture and		
948	Patient Follow-up; Draft Guidance for Industry" dated July 2018.			
949	-			
950	We recommend that	GT products with transposon elements should be monitored in a		
951	similar way as gammaretroviral or lentiviral vectors. This recommendation is based on			
952	the potential safety risk of insertional mutagenesis due to the random integration directed			
953	by the transposon, and due to the potential for remobilization of a transposon (secondary			
954	transposition-insertio	on event) as a result of the continuing presence of the transposase		
955	enzyme in target cell	s. Yet, if your GT product contains transposon elements you may		
956	propose shorter LTF	U observation by providing adequate supporting data/information		
957	related to your produ	elated to your product.		
958	v 1			
959	2. Data H	Reporting		
960				
961	If no e	evidence of oligoclonality or monoclonality is observed, we		
962	recom	mend that you report a summary of all analyses for the pattern of		
963	vector	integration sites in narrative or tabular form in the annual report to		
964	your I	ND (21 CFR 312.33(b)(5)). However, if evidence of oligoclonality		
965	or mo	noclonality is observed, you must submit this essential information		
966	in an i	information amendment to the IND (21 CFR 312.31(a)). We		
967	recom	mend that you submit this amendment within 30 days of receiving		
968	the rep	port of such an observation.		
969	-			
970	3. Inform	ned Consent in Trials Involving Retroviral Vectors		
971		č		
972	Please	e see section V.E for general consideration of LTFU observation		
973	inform	ned consent. In accordance with 21 CFR 50.25(a)(2), for all clinical		
974	trials i	in which subjects are exposed to retroviral vectors, the informed		
975	consei	nt documents must include current, complete and accurate disclosure		

976	of the development of leukemias in the clinical trials where such adverse			
977	events were reported. Further, the information that is given to the subject			
978	or his/her representative must be in language understandable to the subject			
979	or representative (21 CFR 50.20). We provide the following list as			
980	information and language we recommend be included in the informed			
981	consent document, where applicable, in the section describing the risks			
982	assoc	associated with the study agent:		
983				
984	a.	Description of study agent - The study involves giving a person		
985		some cells that have been changed by a retroviral vector. A		
986		retroviral vector is a virus that can insert genetic material into cells.		
987	b.	Mechanism of action for retroviral vectors - When retroviral		
988		vectors enter a normal cell in the body, the deoxyribonucleic acid		
989		(DNA) of the vector inserts itself into the normal DNA in that cell.		
990		This process is called DNA integration		
991	C	Effect of DNA integration - Most DNA integration is expected to		
992	•••	cause no harm to the cell or to the patient. However, there is a		
993		chance that DNA integration might result in abnormal activity of		
994		other genes. In most cases, this effect will have no health		
995		consequences. However, in some cases, abnormal activity of a		
996		gene may cause unpredictable harm such as the development of		
997		cancer		
998	b	Discussion of delayed adverse event leukemia-like malignancy		
999	G .	occurring in human studies - It is important that you know about		
1000		some cancers that occurred in another gene therapy research study		
1001		Clinical studies were conducted in France and United Kingdom to		
1002		treat a disease called X-linked Severe Combined		
1002		Immunodeficiency (SCID) Years after receiving cells that were		
1005		modified by a retroviral vector a significant number of the		
1005		children in this small study developed a leukemia-like malignant		
1006		disease (cancer). One child died from the cancer A group of		
1007		experts in this field studied the results from tests performed on		
1008		these children's blood cells. They concluded that cancer was		
1009		caused by the retroviral vector DNA. However, most of the		
1010		children with X-linked SCID who have received experimental gene		
1011		therapy have not been found to have cancer at this time. Although		
1012		they appear healthy we still do not know whether they too will		
1012		develon cancer		
1013	e	Risk of malignancy for this study - We do not know if the		
1015	с.	retroviral vector used in this protocol might cause cancer		
1016		However, you should be aware that the DNA contained in		
1017		retroviral vectors will integrate into your DNA and that under		
1018		some circumstances: this has been known to cause cancer months		
1019		to vears later		
1020		to yours lutor.		
1040				

1021		G.	Special	Considerations Regarding Product Involving Genome Editing	
1022			-		
1023		While	the gene	ral principles for LTFU observations of GT products also apply to LTFU	
1024		observations of genome editing products, we recommend that you consider the following:			
1025					
1026			1.	Propose a specific plan to monitor for delayed adverse events based on the	
1027				off-target activities noted in your preclinical studies (e.g., <i>in vivo</i> , <i>in vitro</i>	
1028				and <i>in silico</i> analysis such as INDEL, (insertion and deletion of bases in a	
1029				genome). For example, if the off-target activity involves a tumor	
1030				suppression gene in liver cells, you may propose a monitoring plan for	
1031				evaluation of occurrence of liver cancer as part of the LTFU observation.	
1032				1	
1033			2.	Propose a monitoring plan regarding the adverse events from the specific	
1034				organ system that the genome editing targets, that may include history and	
1035				physical examination, general and specific laboratory tests, and imaging	
1036				studies.	
1037					
1038			3.	If direct monitoring of the target tissue is not ethical or feasible, such as,	
1039				the brain tissue, you may propose an alternative plan for monitoring of the	
1040				product's effects.	
1041				1	
1042			4.	Ouantitate the relationship between the off-target and on-target activities.	
1043				and use the measured level of on-target activity to predict the level of off-	
1044				target activity and, if appropriate, establish a follow-up plan;	
1045					
1046			5.	If the genome editing product is delivered via systemic administration,	
1047				clinical safety monitoring may be directed not only to off-target activity of	
1048				the target organ or tissue, but also to other off-target effects that may occur	
1049				in other tissues and organs. Accordingly, you may include appropriate	
1050				monitoring tests with a rationale for the proposed monitoring in your	
1051				LTFU protocol.	
1052				1	
1053					
1054	VI.	GENE	ERAL C	ONSIDERATIONS FOR POST-MARKETING MONITORING	
1055		PLAN	IS FOR	GENE THERAPY PRODUCTS	
1056					
1057	The nu	umber o	of subject	s receiving GT products is typically limited during clinical investigations.	
1058	In addition, the recommended LTFU (e.g., 15-year period) will often not elapse for all subjects				
1059	who received an investigational GT product in the pre-marketing program before the product is				
1060	license	ed. Con	nsidering	that, the safety data generated during clinical trials may not capture all	
1061	possib	le delay	ved adver	rse events. Therefore, continuing LTFU observations is often essential	
1062	even a	fter a pi	roduct's	licensure. Consequently, we recommend that at the time of your BLA	
1063	submission you submit a Pharmacovigilance Plan (PVP) as described in the FDA Guidance for				
1064	Industry; E2E Pharmacovigilance Planning (Ref. 31). The contents of PVP for a particular GT				
1065					

Draft – Not for Implementation

product will depend on its safety profile and will be based on data, which includes the pre-

licensure clinical safety database, published literature, and known product-class effects, among

1066

1067

1068 other considerations. 1069 1070 Routine surveillance for licensed biological products includes adverse event (AE) reporting in 1071 accordance with 21 CFR 600.80 (reporting of expedited and non-expedited AEs as well as 1072 periodic safety reports). Submission of reports for serious, life-threatening and unexpected 1073 adverse events may also be required in an expedited manner beyond routine required reporting. 1074 1075 Additional pharmacovigilance elements may be needed, such as those described in the FDA 1076 Good Pharmacovigilance Practices and Pharmacoepidemiologic Assessment; Guidance for 1077 Industry dated March 2005 (Ref. 32), for LTFU of patients treated with GT products. For 1078 instance, we may recommend that you establish a registry to systematically capture and track 1079 data from treated patients with solicited sample collection, and follow-up of adverse events to 1080 resolution or stabilization to collect additional pertinent data. It may be necessary to establish a 1081 registry system to specifically capture adverse event data from treated patients who receive a GT 1082 product. This registry system can be a part of the PVP plan and reviewed at the time of 1083 licensure. 1084 1085 For any proposed or required post-marketing observational studies or clinical trials, we 1086 recommend that you include in your BLA submission the study protocol, statistical analysis plan, 1087 and a projected schedule of anticipated study milestones. Your study protocol should include 1088 specific adverse events of interest that you intend to evaluate, and the duration of observation for 1089 all patients enrolled in your post-marketing study. 1090 1091 During our review of your BLA, we will also assess whether a Risk Evaluation and Mitigation 1092 Strategy (REMS) is necessary to ensure that the benefits of your product outweigh its risks. If 1093 you consider that risk mitigation measures are necessary for the safe use of your product, you 1094 may voluntarily submit your proposed REMS as desecribed in Format and Content of a REMS 1095 Document; Draft Guidance for Industry; Drug Safety dated October 2017 (Ref. 33). 1096 1097 1098 VII. LONG TERM FOLLOW-UP UNDER SPECIAL CIRCUMSTANCES 1099 1100 A sponsor may cease to operate or may decide to inactivate, transfer or withdraw an IND before 1101 completion of LTFU observations for all subjects exposed to the GT product under its IND. 1102 Under such circumstances, prior to inactivating, transferring or withdrawing an IND, or ceasing 1103 to operate, we recommend that a sponsor consult with OTAT on the plans for completion of 1104 LTFU observation. 1105 1106 1107

Draft – Not for Implementation

1108 VIII. DEFINITIONS

- 1109 1110 The following defin
- 1110 The following definitions apply to this guidance:
- Engineered site-specific endonucleases: Enzymes that are capable of precisely cleaving
 (cutting) DNA based on specific recognition of the DNA sequence at or near the site of DNA
 cleavage.
- 1116 **Genome editing:** The processes by which the genome sequence is changed by adding, 1117 replacing, or removing DNA base pairs using engineered site specific nucleases.
- 1117
- 1119 Gene transfer: The transfer of genetic material into a cell.
- 1120
- 1121 Human gene therapy: Human gene therapy seeks to modify or manipulate the expression of a 1122 gene or to alter the biological properties of living cells for therapeutic use.
- 1123
- Human gene therapy product: Human gene therapy products are defined as all products that
 mediate their effects by transcription or translation of transferred genetic material, or by
- specifically altering host (human) genetic sequences. Some examples of gene therapy products
- include nucleic acids, genetically modified microorganisms (e.g., viruses, bacteria, fungi),
- engineered site-specific nucleases used for human genome editing⁴, and *ex vivo* genetically modified human cells.
- 1130
- 1131 Integration (of DNA): The process whereby exogenous DNA sequences become incorporated1132 into a genome.
- 1133
- 1134 Latency (of a viral infection): A period of time during which a virus is present in the host
 1135 without producing overt clinical symptoms.
- Maximum feasible dose (MFD) (in preclinical studies): The highest dose that can be
 administered to an animal. Limitations may be due to animal size, administration site, or product
 characteristics. The MFD may not be equivalent to the clinically relevant dose.
- 1140
- 1141 **Persistence:** With respect to transferred or altered genetic material, the continued presence of
- 1142 transferred or modified genetic sequences in the host after acute exposure to a gene therapy
- agent, whether due to integration of the genetic sequence into the host genome, deletion,
- 1144 insertion, or otherwise modified following genome editing, or to latent infection with the viral
- 1145 vector bearing the genetic sequence.
- 1146
- 1147 Reactivation (of a viral infection): The re-emergence of a symptomatic or asymptomatic viral
 1148 infection following a period of latency.
- 1149

⁴ Human Genome Editing: Science, Ethics, and Governance. The National Academies Press; 2017. <u>https://www.nap.edu/read/24623/chapter/1#xvii</u>

- 1150 **Transgene:** An exogenous gene that is introduced into a host cell.
- 1151
- 1152 Vector sequences: Refers to specific sequences of nucleotides, either DNA or RNA, that have
- been introduced into a gene therapy product and includes the vector backbone, transgene(s), and regulatory elements.
- 1155
- 1156 **Vector:** A vehicle consisting of, or derived from, biological material that is designed to deliver
- genetic material. Examples include plasmids, viruses, and bacteria that have been modified to
- 1158 transfer genetic material.
- 1159

Draft – Not for Implementation

1160 **IX. REFERENCES** 1161

- Guidance for Industry: Gene Therapy Clinical Trials Observing Subjects for Delayed
 Adverse Events, November 2006.
- 1164https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryIn1165formation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM078719.pdf
- 1166 2. Human Genome Editing: Science, Ethics, and Governance, National Academy Press,1167 Washington D.C., 2017.
- 3. Donahue, R.E., et al., Helper virus induced T cell lymphoma in nonhuman primates after
 retroviral mediated gene transfer. Journal of Experimental Medicine 176:1125-1135, 1992.
- 4. Hacein-Bey-Abina, S., et al., Sustained correction of X-linked severe combined
 immunodeficiency by ex vivo gene therapy. N. Engl. J. Med. 346: 1185-1193, 2002.
- 5. Biological Response Modifiers Advisory Committee (BRMAC), Meeting Minutes,
 Department of Health and Human Services, Food and Drug Administration, CBER, October
 10, 2002.
- 6. Biological Response Modifiers Advisory Committee, Meeting Minutes Department of Health
 and Human Services (BRMAC), Food and Drug Administration, CBER, November 17,
 2000; April 6, 2001; and October 24, 2001.
- 1178
 7. Nyberg, K., et al., Workshop on long-term follow-up of participants in human gene transfer
 1179
 research. Molecular Therapy 6:976-980, 2004.
- 8. Hacein-Bey-Abina, S., et al., LMO2-associated clonal T cell proliferation in two patients
 after gene therapy for SCID-X1. Science 302: 415-419, 2003.
- 1182
 9. Hacein-Bey-Abina, S., et al., Insertional oncogenesis in 4 patients after retrovirus-mediated gene therapy of SCID-X1. J. Clin Invest 118: 3132-3142. 2008.
- 10. Braun, et al., Gene Therapy for Wiskott-Aldrich Syndrome—Long term Efficacy and
 Genotoxicity Science Translational Medicine 6: 227, 2014.
- 1186 11. Cavazzana-Calvo, et al., Gene therapy of human severe combined immunodeficiency
 (SCID)-X1 disease, Science 288: 669, 2000.
- 1188 12 Howe, et al., Insertional mutagenesis combined with acquired somatic mutations causes
 1189 leukemogenesis following gene therapy of SCID-X1 patients. J Clin Invest 118: 143-150,
 1190 2008.
- 1191 13. Cavazzana-Calvo, et al., Transfusion independence and HMGA2 activation after gene therapy of human β-thalassaemia. Nature 467: 318-322, 2010.
- 1193 14. Cavazzana-Calvo, et al., Haematopoietic stem cell transplantation for SCID patients: where
 1194 do we stand? British Journal of Haematology 160: 146-152, 2013.
- 1195 15. Niedere, r H.A. and Bangham, C.R.M.; Integration site and clonal expansion in human
 chronic retroviral infection and gene therapy. Viruses 6: 4140-4164, 2014.
- 1197 16. Sakuma, T., et al., Lentiviral vectors: Basic to translational Biochem J 443: 603-618, 2012.
- 1198 17. Maetzig, T. et al., Gammaretroviral vectors: Biology, Technology and Application. Viruses1199 3: 677-713, 2011.
- 1200 18. Aronovich, E., et al., The Sleeping Beauty transposon system: a non-viral vector for gene
 1201 therapy. Hum Mol Genet 20: R14-R20, 2011.
- 1202 19. Guidance for Industry: Guidance for Human Somatic Cell Therapy and Gene Therapy,1203 March 1998,

Draft – Not for Implementation

1204 https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryIn 1205 formation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM081670.pdf 1206 20. Bauer, S., Current FDA approach for preclinical vector biodistribution studies, Recombinant 1207 DNA Advisory Committee Meeting, March 12, 1999. 1208 21. Shayakhmetov, D.M., et al., A high-capacity, capsid-modified hybrid adenovirus/adenoassociated virus vector for stable transduction of human hematopoietic cells. Journal of 1209 1210 Virology 76(3):1135-1143, 2002. 1211 22. Goncalves, M.A., et al., Stable transduction of large DNA by high-capacity adeno-associated 1212 virus/adenovirus hybrid vectors. Virology 321(2):287-296, 2004. 1213 23. Picard-Maureau, M., et al., Foamy virus—adenovirus hybrid vectors. Gene Therapy 1214 11(8):722-728, 2004. 1215 24. Yant, S.R., et al., Transposition from a gutless adeno-transposon vector stabilizes transgene 1216 expression in vivo. Nature Biotechnology 20(10):999-1005, 2002. 1217 25. Wang, Z., et al., Detection of integration of plasmid DNA into host genomic DNA following 1218 intramuscular injection and electroporation. Gene Therapy 11(8):711-721, 2004. 1219 26. Guidance for Industry: Considerations for the Design of Early-Phase Clinical Trials of 1220 Cellular and Gene Therapy Products, August 2015, 1221 https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryIn 1222 formation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM564952.pdf 1223 27. ICH E6 Good Clinical Practice: Consolidated Guidance, April 1996. 1224 28. E2F Development Safety Update Report; Guidance for Industry, August 2011, 1225 https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidanc 1226 es/UCM073109.pdf 1227 29. Ott, M.G., et al., Correction of X-linked chronic granulomatous disease by gene therapy, 1228 augmented by insertional activation of MDS1-EVI1, PRDM16 or SETBP1. Nature Medicine 1229 12(4):401-409, 2006. 1230 30. Schmidt, M., et al., Clonality analysis after retroviral-mediated gene transfer to CD34+ cells 1231 from the cord blood of ADA-deficient SCID neonates. Nature Medicine 9(4):463-468, 2003. 1232 31. E2E Pharmacovigilance Planning; Guidance for Industry, April 2005, 1233 http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidance 1234 s/ucm073107.pdf. 1235 32. Guidance for Industry: Good Pharmacovigilance Practices and Pharmacoepidemiologic 1236 Assessment, March 2005, 1237 https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidanc 1238 es/UCM071696.pdf 33. Format and Content of a REMS Document; Draft Guidance for Industry; Drug Safety, 1239 1240 October 2017,* 1241 https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidanc 1242 es/UCM184128.pdf 1243 1244 1245 1246 1247 1248 *When finalized, this guidance will represent FDA's current thinking on this topic.

Draft – Not for Implementation

1250 APPENDICES

1252 APPENDIX 1: INFORMATION FOR LONG TERM FOLLOW-UP (LTFU) 1253 OBSERVATION ANNUAL REPORT

Category	Required LTFU Data	Rationale
Protocol Title	"Long Term Follow-Up Observation Annual Report"	The placement of this title will facilitate FDA to search for LTFU data in our database
LTFU Protocol Status	Total length (years) Starting date Total number of subjects enrolled Subjects that have completed LTFU observation Remaining subjects on LTFU observation	This will serve as a brief summary.
Product Information	Vector persistence Clonality analyses RCR On and off-target analyses for products that involve genome editing	This is the focus of the product safety assessment in the LTFU protocol and provides important information for monitoring, and for determination of the length of the LTFU observation.
Preclinical Information	New preclinical data Relevant findings from the literature	This provides data and signals to guide the direction of LTFU observation.
Clinical Information	Any related delayed adverse event with brief narrative Oncological, neurological, hematological, auto- immune or other disorder Causal analyses based on evidence from clinical, laboratory, molecular, cytogenetic, histological, HLA analysis, deep sequencing data Serious adverse events Evidence for persistence of the product/therapeutic protein/sequences, and durability of the clinical effects	This is the focus of the product safety assessment in LTFU observation, and serves as a guide for the types of AE, organ systems, and methodology to attribute AE/Serious Adverse Event (SAE) to the GT product. The durability of clinical effect also allows for an assessment of product efficacy in the LTFU observation report, but inclusion of such data is at the sponsor's discretion.
Revision of LTFU protocol	Rationale for modifying LTFU observation FDA agreement to revised LTFU protocol: synopsis of meeting(s) discussion/email communication Discussion and date of discontinuation	This will provide an opportunity for revising the content and length of the LTFU observation based on data collected in the studies or other relevant information.

Draft – Not for Implementation

1258 APPENDIX 2: SAMPLE TEMPLATE: LONG TERM FOLLOW-UP (LTFU) 1259 OBSERVATION ANNUAL REPORT

Category	List of LTFU data	Annual reporting
Protocol title	"Long Term Follow-Up Observation Annual Report"	[product name]: LTFU2017 annual report for protocol [#]
LTFU protocol status	Total length (years):	15 years
	Starting date:	October 30, 2009
	Total number of subjects enrolled:	30
	Subjects that have completed LTFU observation:	0
	Remaining subjects on LTFU observation:	20 (2 deaths, 5 lost to flu, 3 drop outs)
Product information	Vector persistence:	PCR ¹ of [name] transgene positive in 17 of 20 subjects still on study at 5 yrs and 3 subjects at 7 yrs.
	Clonality analyses:	No clones more than 1% for more than 1 testing period
	RCR	ND ² , request to discontinue RCR testing
	On and off-target analyses for products that involve genome editing	NA ³
Preclinical information	New preclinical data	Final study report for large reproductive toxicity study in normal SD rats (study report [#]). Published in [journal citation]. No additional studies ongoing at this time.
	Relevant findings from the literature	No new literature on [x] disease at this time.
Clinical information	Any related delayed adverse event with brief narrative	One case of rash that resolved with steroids. No other symptoms. PCR of rash biopsy was negative for vector.
	Oncological, neurological, hematological, auto-immune or other disorder	Secondary tumor on left ear, negative for vector sequences by PCR. Unrelated, melanoma.

	Causal analyses based on evidence from clinical, laboratory, molecular, cytogenetic, histological, HLA analysis, deep sequencing data Serious adverse events	NA 2 deaths due to sepsis, related to underlying disease. No other unexpected SAE reported
	Evidence for persistence of the product/therapeutic protein/sequences, and durability of the clinical effects	20 subjects are still on study with vector persists in BM and PBMC samples, and clinical benefit observed. All twenty subjects have reconstituted immune system, with some b cell aphasia and low platelet counts in three subjects, however no transfusions needed to date.
Revision of LTFU Protocol	Rationale for modifying LTFU observation	All RCR testing results negative (n=150 samples). Risk assessment determined very low risk of RCR developing in subjects at this time.
	FDA agreement to revised LTFU protocol: synopsis of meeting(s) discussion/email communication	Revision to LTFU discussed during pre-BLA meeting [date]. RCR testing will no longer performed for LTFU protocol [#]
	Discussion and date of discontinuation	NA

¹ polymerase chain reaction ² none detected (ND) ³ not applicable (NA)

1260 1261

Testing of Retroviral Vector-Based Human Gene Therapy Products for Replication Competent Retrovirus During Product Manufacture and Patient Follow-up

Draft Guidance for Industry

This guidance document is for comment purposes only.

Submit one set of either electronic or written comments on this draft guidance by the date provided in the *Federal Register* notice announcing the availability of the draft guidance. Submit electronic comments to https://www.regulations.gov. Submit written comments to the Dockets Management Staff (HFA-305), Food and Drug Administration, 5630 Fishers Lane, Rm. 1061, Rockville, MD 20852. You should identify all comments with the docket number listed in the notice of availability that publishes in the *Federal Register*. Additional copies of this guidance are available from the Office of Communication, Outreach and Development (OCOD), 10903 New Hampshire Ave., Bldg. 71, Rm. 3128, Silver Spring, MD 20993-0002, or by calling 1-800-835-4709 or 240-402-8010, or email ocod@fda.hhs.gov, or from the Internet at https://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guid ances/default.htm. For questions on the content of this guidance, contact OCOD at the phone numbers or email address listed above. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Food and Drug Administration Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research July 2018**

39		Table of Contents	
40			
41			
42	I.	INTRODUCTION	1
43	II.	BACKGROUND	2
44	III.	RECOMMENDATIONS FOR PRODUCT TESTING	3
45		A. Material for Testing	3
46		1. Vector Producer Cell Master Cell Bank	4
47		2. Retroviral Vector Supernatant Product and End of Production Cells	5
48		3. Ex Vivo Transduced Cells	5
49		B. Amounts for Testing	6
50		1. Supernatant Testing	6
51		2. Cell Testing	7
52		C. Assays for Testing	7
53	IV.	RECOMMENDATIONS FOR PATIENT MONITORING	8
54		A. RCR Testing Schedule	8
55		B. Recommended Assavs	9
56	V.	DOCUMENTATION OF RCR TESTING RESULTS	9
57	VI.	POST-LICENSURE CONSIDERATIONS	10
58	VII.	REFERENCES	11
59	APPE	ENDIX	13
60			

Draft – Not for Implementation

Testing of Retroviral Vector-Based Human Gene Therapy Products for Replication Competent Retrovirus During Product Manufacture and Patient Follow-up

Draft Guidance for Industry

This draft guidance, when finalized, will represent the current thinking of the Food and Drug Administration (FDA or Agency) on this topic. It does not establish any rights for any person and is not binding on FDA or the public. You can use an alternative approach if it satisfies the requirements of the applicable statutes and regulations. To discuss an alternative approach, contact the FDA staff responsible for this guidance as listed on the title page.

76 I. INTRODUCTION

77 78 The potential pathogenicity of replication competent retrovirus (RCR) requires vigilant testing to 79 exclude the presence of RCR in vector-based human gene therapy products (Ref. 1). We, the 80 FDA, are providing you, sponsors of retroviral vector-based human gene therapy products, 81 recommendations regarding the testing for RCR during the manufacture of retroviral vector-82 based gene therapy products, and during follow-up monitoring of patients who have received 83 retroviral vector-based gene therapy products. Recommendations include the identification and 84 amount of material to be tested as well as general testing methods. In addition, recommendations 85 are provided for monitoring patients for evidence of retroviral infection after administration of 86 retroviral vector-based gene therapy products. 87 88 The *Retroviridae* family is composed of two subfamilies: *Orthoretrovirinae*, which consists of 89 six genera of viruses: Alpharetrovirus, Betaretrovirus, Gammaretrovirus, Deltaretrovirus, 90 Epsilonretrovirus, and Lentivirus, and Spumaretrovirinae (foamy viruses) which has recently 91 been updated to consist of five genera of viruses: Bovispumavirus, Equispumavirus,

92 Felispumavirus, Prosimiispumavirus, and Simiispumavirus (Refs. 2, 3). RCR can be generated

93 during the manufacture of a retrovirus vector from any of these genera. At this time, the most

94 common retrovirus-based vectors are constructed from gammaretroviruses or lentiviruses, and

95 therefore further details are provided for these genera. Historically, lentivirus RCR is referred to

- 96 as replication competent lentivirus (RCL).¹
- 97

65

70

71

72

73

- 98 This guidance, when finalized, is intended to supersede the guidance entitled, "Guidance for
- 99 Industry: Supplemental Guidance on Testing for Replication Competent Retrovirus in Retroviral
- 100 Vector Based Gene Therapy Products and During Follow-up of Patients in Clinical Trials Using
- 101 Retroviral Vectors" dated November 2006 (2006 RCR Guidance) (Ref. 4). This guidance, when

 $^{^1\,\}text{RCR}$ and RCL are synonymous for the purposes of this guidance.

Draft – Not for Implementation

finalized, is also intended to supplement the following two guidances: the "Long Term Follow-Up After Administration of Human Gene Therapy Products; Draft Guidance for Industry" dated
July 2018 (Long Term Follow-up Draft Guidance) and "Chemistry, Manufacturing, and Control (CMC) Information for Human Gene Therapy Investigational New Drug Applications (INDs);
Draft Guidance for Industry" dated July 2018 (CMC Draft Guidance).²
FDA's guidance documents, including this guidance, do not establish legally enforceable

109 responsibilities. Instead, guidances describe the FDA's current thinking on a topic and should be

110 viewed only as recommendations, unless specific regulatory or statutory requirements are cited.

111 The use of the word *should* in FDA's guidances means that something is suggested or

- 112 recommended, but not required.
- 113 114

115II.BACKGROUND

116

FDA's Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research (CBER) recommendations for RCR testing
 during retroviral vector production and patient monitoring were originally developed at a time
 when clinical experience was limited to a small number of studies using gammaretrovirus

120 vectors (Ref. 5). At that time, the overriding safety concerns associated with the use of retroviral

121 vectors were exemplified by the findings of an animal study involving administration of

122 gammaretroviral vector-transduced bone marrow progenitor cells that had been inadvertently

exposed to high-titer RCR, and administered to severely immunosuppressed rhesus monkeys

124 (Ref. 1). In this setting, 3/10 animals developed lymphomas and died within 200 days. The

RCR was presumed to be etiologically associated with the disease by virtue of the presence of multiple murine RCR sequences in the lymphomas and an inverse correlation between anti-

retroviral antibodies and development of disease (Refs. 6, 7). In contrast, another study in

128 moderately-immunosuppressed cynomolgus monkeys exposed intravenously to RCR showed no

129 signs of disease (Refs. 8, 9).

130

131 More than two decades of experience has generated a substantial amount of data on the safety of

retroviral vectors in clinical applications for gene therapy, including experience with different

- 133 vector designs, vector producing cells, RCR detection assays, and lack of positive results from
- 134 RCR testing of vector lots, ex vivo transduced cells, and patient samples collected during
- 135 monitoring. These data have provided the basis for public discussions, including Retroviral
- Breakout Sessions at the 1996 and 1997 FDA/National Institutes of Health (NIH) Gene Therapy
- 137 Conferences, the 2010 Cellular, Tissue, and Gene Therapies Advisory Committee meeting (Ref. 128 10) and the 2014 American Society of Care and Cellular Therapy (ASCOT) Particle Content of Care and Cellular T
- 138 10), and the 2014 American Society of Gene and Cellular Therapy (ASGCT) Breakout Session

The CMC Draft Guidance is available at this website:

² When finalized, these guidances will represent FDA's current thinking on the topics. The Long Term Follow-up Draft Guidance is available at this website:

https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/C ellularandGeneTherapy/UCM610797.pdf

 $[\]underline{https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/C$

Draft – Not for Implementation

139 on Replication Competent Virus (Ref. 11). In addition, FDA scientists published an evaluation 140 of RCR testing methods associated with the use of retroviral vectors (Ref. 12). During this time, the gene therapy community has improved retroviral vector design to reduce the likelihood of 141 142 generating RCR during the manufacturing process (Refs. 13, 14). For instance, the likelihood 143 that recombination will generate RCR is reduced by manufacturing vectors using a split plasmid 144 design, where the vector genome is on a separate plasmid from the envelope protein and 145 packaging functions. RCR generation can be further reduced by using more than two plasmids 146 for vector production. Lentiviral vectors have been further modified to remove genes encoding 147 accessory and regulatory proteins, which would cripple the functionality of an RCR in the event 148 an RCR may be generated (Refs. 15, 16).

149

150 Summary of Revisions from the 2006 RCR Guidance:

151

152 With consideration of the accrued scientific evidence of safety associated with retroviral vector 153 design and testing, we are revising our current recommendations for RCR testing during 154 retroviral vector-based gene therapy product manufacture and patient monitoring. More 155 specifically, we are no longer recommending RCR testing on working cell banks for retroviral 156 producer cells. We have also revised our recommendations regarding the amount of vector that 157 should be tested (section III.B and Appendix 1-1 of this document). Briefly, rather than testing 158 based on production lot size we are recommending that you test a sufficient amount of vector to 159 demonstrate that your vector contains <1 RCR per patient dose. Additionally, we are 160 recommending that all retroviral vector transduced cell products be tested for RCR, including 161 those cultured for 4 days or less. We have found no convincing evidence that the length of 162 culture time influences the likelihood of RCR development in transduced cells. However, if you 163 have accumulated manufacturing and clinical experience that demonstrates that your transduced 164 cell product is consistently RCR-negative (section III.A.3 of this document), we recommend that 165 you provide this data to support reduction or elimination of testing ex vivo genetically modified cells for RCR. Finally, we have revised our advice for active monitoring of patients following 166 167 administration of retroviral vector-based products (section IV of this document), and added post-168 licensure considerations for RCR testing and risk assessment (section VI of this document). 169 170

- 171 III. RECOMMENDATIONS FOR PRODUCT TESTING
- 172 173

174

A. Material for Testing

175 Generally, retroviral vectors are manufactured by collection of supernatant following 176 transient or stable production from cultured cells. RCR may develop at any step during 177 manufacturing, from the initial transfection or transduction steps through production of 178 the retroviral vector supernatant. In addition, the expansion of ex vivo transduced cells in 179 culture provides the potential for amplification of an RCR contaminant that may be below 180 the level of detection in the retroviral vector supernatant. Therefore, current 181 recommendations include testing of material from multiple stages of product manufacture 182 (see Table of this document).

184	When the vector is produced by transient transfection, the cell banks should be qualified
185	according to the CMC Draft Guidance. Retroviral vector RCR-specific testing
186	requirements are outlined below for the vector supernatant (section III.A.2 of this
187	document), end of production cells (section III.A.2 of this document), and ex vivo
188	transduced cells (section III.A.3 of this document), if applicable.
189	
190	We recommend use of a stably-transfected Vector Producer Cell (VPC) bank system,
191	when possible, in order to ensure an adequate and consistent supply of retroviral vector.
192	The generation of a Master Cell Bank (MCB) for the VPC allows for the collection of
193	cells of uniform composition derived from a single cell clone. The Working Cell Bank
194	(WCB) is derived from the MCB, following expansion by serial subculture to a specified
195	passage number (refer to "Points to Consider in the Characterization of Cell Lines Used
196	to Produce Biologicals" dated May $(1993)^3$. When the vector is collected from VPC
197	banks, RCR-specific testing of the VPC MCB (section III.A.1 of this document) is
198	recommended in addition to vector supernatant (section III.A.2 of this document), end of
199	production cells (section III.A.2 of this document), and ex vivo transduced cells (section
200	III.A.3 of this document), if applicable.
201	
202	1. Vector Producer Cell Master Cell Bank
203	
204	Both cells and supernatant from the VPC MCB should be tested for RCR using a
205	cell line permissive for the RCR that could potentially be generated in a given
206	producer cell line. For example, VPC containing envelopes such as gibbon ape
207	leukemia virus (GALV) envelope or vesicular stomatitis virus glycoprotein
208	(VSV-G) are typically tested on a human cell line. Other retroviral envelopes
209	should be tested on a cell line permissive for infection by the relevant RCR.
210	1
211	If the VPC MCB was produced using a retroviral vector pseudotyped with an
212	envelope distinct from the clinical vector product, for example, an ecotropic
213	Murine Leukemia Virus (MLV), the potential exists for introduction of an RCR
214	with that distinct envelope. Even though an ecotropic MLV RCR may present a
215	minimal direct safety risk to humans, the presence of any replication-competent
216	genome in the VPC MCB is problematic because of the increased probability of
217	generating an RCR with a human host range through recombination with elements
218	within the VPC.
219	
220	Therefore, in cases where VPC are derived, at any step, by transduction with an
221	ecotropic retroviral vector, testing of the MCB for the presence of ecotropic RCR
222	is recommended, in addition to amphotropic RCR testing. For example, VPC
223	possibly containing ecotropic MLV envelope should be tested for RCR on an
224	appropriate cell line, such as that derived from <i>Mus dunni</i> , which is permissive to
225	

³ <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/SafetyAvailability/UCM162863.pdf.</u>

226	infection by ecotropic MLV-like RCR (Ref. 17), except in the case of Moloney
227	murine leukemia virus (MoMLV). Insufficient testing of the VPC MCB may
228	necessitate additional RCR testing of the working cell bank, if applicable.
229	
230	2. Retroviral Vector Supernatant Product and End of Production Cells
231	1
232	Both retroviral vector supernatant lots and end of production (EOP) cells should
233	be tested for RCR. EOP cells are defined as cells from which a single bulk
234	harvest of retrovirus-containing supernatant is taken or cells from which the last
235	of a serial set of supernatant harvests is taken. This recommendation is based on
236	data and experience reported at the 1997 FDA/NIH Gene Therapy Conference.
237	where it was reported that RCR in vector production lots was not always
238	consistently detected in both vector supernatant and EOP cells. These data
239	support the position that dual testing provides a complementary approach to
240	assuring RCR-free retroviral supernatant
241	
242	3 Ex Vivo Transduced Cells
243	
244	It is possible that RCR may be present in your vector at undetectable levels
245	which could be amplified during the manufacture of ex vivo transduced cells
246	Therefore we recommend that each lot of ex vivo transduced cells and culture
247	supernatant be tested for RCR. This recommendation applies regardless of the
248	length of time that the cells are cultured after transduction because the length of
240	culture time (e.g. greater than 4 days) has not been shown to strongly influence
250	the likelihood of RCR development
250	the fixelihood of Kerk development.
252	However, experience with vectors that have been deliberately designed to
252	minimize the likelihood of recombination suggests that amplification of RCR in
253	transduced cells is unlikely for many vectors. If you have accumulated
255	manufacturing and clinical experience that demonstrates that your transduced cell
255	product is consistently RCR-negative (section III A 3 of this document) we
250	recommend that you provide this data to support reduction or elimination of
258	testing ex vivo genetically modified cells for RCR. We recommend you include a
259	discussion of safety features in the vector design that reduces the likelihood of
260	generating RCR a description of vector testing in accordance with current
261	guidance and your experience manufacturing RCR-free cell products. You may
262	provide information supporting removal of RCR testing for lot release of ex vivo
262	transduced cells in your IND (i.e. in the section titled: Manufacturing Process
264	Development Section 3.2.5.2.6 or 3.2.P.2.3 of the electronic Common Technical
265	Document (eCTD)) or discuss with the EDA during your pre-IND meeting
205	Document (cc1D)) of discuss with the TDA during your pre-five incentig.
260	If the ex vivo transduced cell product is not tested for DCD at lot release we
267	recommend archiving a sample for at least 6 months after the product avairation
200	date. We recommend that you retain a sufficient amount (section III P 2 and
209	Appendix of this document) of the call product to perform DCD testing in the
270	Appendix of this document) of the cell product to perform KCK testing in the

Draft – Not for Implementation

271future if necessary (section IV of this document). Samples should be archived272with appropriate safeguards to ensure long-term storage (e.g., a monitored freezer273alarm storage system) and an efficient system for the prompt linkage and retrieval274of the stored samples with the medical records of the patient and the production275lot records.

Table. Recommendations for Product Testing

Material to be Tested	Frequency of Testing	Testing for Expected RCR ¹	Testing for Ecotropic RCR
		Cells and Supernatant	Cells and Supernatant
МСВ	One-time		
-Derived by transduction with ecotropic vector		Yes	Yes
-Derived by transfection of retroviral vector		Yes	NA ²
plasmid Vector Horwest Material	L ot rolooso		ΝA
-EOP cells -Vector supernatant	Lot release	Yes Yes	NA
Ex vivo Transduced Cells	Lot release	Yes OR archive ³	NA

¹ RCR testing should be based on the type of vector envelopes used. Consult text in

section III.A.1 of this document for details.

² NA, not applicable.

³ If an agreement reached with FDA to discontinue testing; consult text in section III.A.3 of this document.

B. Amounts for Testing

1. Supernatant Testing

Historically, we have recommended that it would be appropriate to test at least 5% of the total supernatant, or 300 mL, to ensure absence of RCR. This volume was set based on our experience at the time with gammaretrovirus vector production lot size, reference material, and patient dosing. From this, we have concluded that current manufacturing experience indicates that <1 RCR/dose equivalent is a tolerable and achievable level for retroviral vector preparations intended for clinical use. We recommend that sufficient supernatant be tested to ensure a 95% probability of detection of RCR if present at a concentration of 1 RCR/dose equivalent. A more detailed explanation of the rationale and the mathematical formulas applied is found in Appendix 1-1 of this document. Using

- 299 the provided formula, you should detail the amount to be tested in the description 300 of RCR testing procedures included in your IND (in the eCTD section: 301 Analytical Procedures 3.2.S.4.2 or 3.2.P.4.2). 302 303 To support the underlying assumption that a single retrovirus will be detected, one 304 should determine a volume in which a single RCR can be detected by an 305 individual RCR assay. Based on the determination of this volume, the total test 306 volume should then be divided into replicate samples, each containing the volume 307 demonstrated to detect a single RCR. When large volumes or high titer retroviral 308 vector preparations are used, interference in RCR detection may occur. Sponsors 309 are encouraged to develop more sensitive detection methods that overcome the 310 interference effect of high titer retroviral vector preparations in order to use the 311 alternative approach. 312 313 2. Cell Testing 314 We recommend that you test 1% or 10^8 (whichever is less) pooled vector-315 316 producing cells or ex vivo transduced cells by co-culture with a permissive cell 317 line. This recommendation is unchanged from previous recommendations and is 318 consistent with public consensus expressed at the 1996 and 1997 FDA/NIH Gene 319 Therapy Conferences. 320 C. 321 **Assays for Testing** 322 323 Vector supernatant assays should include culture of supernatant on a permissive cell line 324 for a minimum of five passages in order to amplify any potential RCR present. Similarly, 325 cell testing should be accomplished by co-culture with a permissive cell line for a 326 minimum of five passages in order to amplify any potential RCR present. Sponsors are 327 encouraged to develop RCR assays that support virus entry, amplification, and particle 328 production specific to vector design (e.g., Mus dunni for ecotropic MLV (Ref. 17), C8166 329 cells for VSV-G pseudotyped HIV-1 (Ref. 18), or 293F-DCSIGN-CD4 cells for E1001 330 enveloped HIV-1 (Ref. 19). The amplified material may then be detected in an 331 appropriate indicator cell assay (e.g., PG-4 S+L- (Ref. 20), XC (Ref. 21)), or by PERT 332 (Ref. 22), or by psi-gag or VSV-G polymerase chain reaction (PCR) (Ref. 23), or by a 333 commercially available p24 ELISA. All assays should include relevant positive and 334 negative controls to assess specificity, sensitivity, and reproducibility of the detection 335 method employed. Each lot of retroviral vector supernatant should be tested for 336 inhibitory effects on detection of RCR by using positive control samples that are added to 337 vector supernatant. 338 339 Alternative methods, such as PCR, may be appropriate for lot release testing of ex vivo
- Alternative methods, such as PCR, may be appropriate for lot release testing of ex vivo
 transduced cells in lieu of culture based methods; particularly, when time constraints are
 present or when you have accumulated sufficient data with the culture based methods.

Draft – Not for Implementation

Any alternative methods should be developed in consultation with CBER. Data on
sensitivity, specificity and reproducibility should be provided to support the use of
alternative methods.

346 347 For assay development, you should develop a reference standard for use as a positive 348 control and for method validation. The reference standard can be used for determination 349 of the volume in which a single RCR can be determined. A gamma etrovirus RCR 350 standard has been developed, its infectious titer has been determined, and it is available 351 through the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC). Refer to Appendices 1-2 and 1-352 3 of this document for detailed information about the gammaretrovirus RCR standard and 353 how it can be used to determine the replicate size and number for RCR detection. 354 Standards have not yet been developed for other retrovirus vectors. We recommend that 355 you develop an in-house reference standard that represents your clinical vector attributes, 356 including, the genetic background, envelope protein, and deletion of accessory proteins. 357 The reference standard should be characterized for growth kinetics in the cells used 358 during the RCR assay and tested for stability. For more information on reference 359 materials, please refer to FDA's "Analytical Procedures and Methods Validation for 360 Drugs and Biologics; Guidance for Industry," dated July 2015.⁴

361 362

364

363 IV. RECOMMENDATIONS FOR PATIENT MONITORING

Previous FDA guidance for active patient monitoring recommended RCR testing and/or
archiving of patient samples at regular intervals for fifteen (15) years. To date, RCR or delayed
adverse events related to RCR have not been reported in patients who have received retrovirusbased gene therapies (Refs. 5, 25, 26, 27, 28).

369 370

371 372

373

374

375

376

377

A. RCR Testing Schedule

We recommend the monitoring schedule to include analysis of patient samples at the following time points: pre-treatment, followed by testing at three, six, and twelve months after treatment, and yearly for up to fifteen (15) years. However, if all post-treatment assays are negative during the first year, collection of the yearly follow-up samples may be discontinued. If any post-treatment samples are positive, further analysis of the RCR, and more extensive patient follow-up should be undertaken, in consultation with CBER.

378 379 380 381 382

After you have accumulated patient monitoring data with your product, you may provide a rationale to discontinue active testing of patient samples for RCR in the safety monitoring section of your clinical protocol. The rationale may include a discussion of safety features in the vector design that reduce the likelihood of generating RCR, as well as results of your previous clinical testing experience.

⁴ https://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidances/ucm386366.pdf

Draft – Not for Implementation

385 As part of the long-term follow-up protocol, a yearly long-term follow-up clinical report⁵ 386 should be submitted to the IND. This history should be targeted towards determination 387 of clinical outcomes suggestive of retroviral disease, such as cancer, neurologic disorders, 388 or other hematologic disorders. Relevant clinical samples should be collected and tested 389 for RCR upon development of an adverse event suggestive of a retrovirus-associated 390 disease. If patients die or develop neoplasms during a gene therapy trial, every effort 391 should be made to assay for RCR in a biopsy sample of the neoplastic tissue or the 392 pertinent autopsy tissue. Sample collection and storage should be compatible with the 393 expected testing strategy. Additional recommendations for long-term follow-up of 394 patients in clinical trials using retroviral vectors are discussed in the Long-Term Follow-395 up Draft Guidance.

B. Recommended Assays

398 399 We recommend two methods that are currently in use for detecting evidence of RCR 400 infection in patients: 1) serologic detection of RCR-specific antibodies; and 2) analysis 401 of patient peripheral blood mononuclear cells by PCR for RCR-specific DNA sequences. 402 The choice of assay may depend on the vector, mode of vector administration, and the 403 clinical indication. For example, it has been shown that direct administration of VPC or 404 repeat direct injection of a vector can result in vector-specific antibodies that do not 405 correlate with the presence of RCR (Refs. 29, 30). Therefore, in cases where vector or 406 VPCs are directly administered, a PCR assay may be preferable over serologic 407 monitoring. Additionally, monitoring of patient samples by PCR may be preferable over 408 serologic monitoring if the patients are immunocompromised to an extent that antibody 409 production may be minimal or not at all. In either situation, all confirmed positive results 410 should be pursued by direct culture assay to obtain and characterize the infectious viral 411 isolate.

412 413

- 414 V. DOCUMENTATION OF RCR TESTING RESULTS
- RCR testing results from production lots and patient monitoring should be documented in
 amendments to the IND file. Positive results from patient monitoring should be reported
 immediately as an adverse experience in the form of an IND safety report (21 CFR 312.32).
 Negative results should be reported by way of the IND annual report (21 CFR 312.33). In
 addition, to enhance the accumulation of data on RCR testing assays, CBER encourages
 members of the gene therapy community to publish data and/or discuss data publicly
 regarding their experience with different vector producer cell lines, patient monitoring, and
- 423 safety.
- 424
- 425

⁵ For more information, refer to section V of the Long Term Follow-up Draft Guidance ("Recommendations for Protocols for Long Term Follow-Up Observations: Clinical Considerations").

Draft – Not for Implementation

426 VI. POST-LICENSURE CONSIDERATIONS

427

428 We recommend that labeling for retroviral vector-based gene therapy products incorporate

429 relevant data and information to clearly present the immediate and long-term risks associated

430 with RCR. As a critical safety test for retroviral vectors, testing for RCR during vector

431 manufacture and release should continue after licensure.

432

433 At the time of submission of your Biologics License Application (BLA),⁶ you should have

434 accumulated sufficient manufacturing and clinical safety data to determine whether there is a

435 significant risk of RCR developing with your product. This risk assessment may be used to

436 propose that periodic patient monitoring for RCR would not be warranted for your product post-

437 licensure. However, you should include a provision in the BLA to collect relevant clinical
438 samples from patients for RCR testing upon development of an adverse event suggestive of a

439 retrovirus-associated disease. In the event patients die or develop neoplasms following product

440 administration, every effort should be made to assay for RCR in a biopsy sample of the

- 441 neoplastic tissue or the pertinent autopsy tissue.
- 442

443 We also recommend continued long term patient follow-up, up to fifteen (15) years, after

444 licensure of retroviral-based gene therapy products to monitor for delayed adverse events. For

445 more information, refer to section VI of the Long Term Follow-up Draft Guidance ("General

446 Considerations for Post-Marketing Monitoring Plans for Gene Therapy Products").

⁶ 21 CFR 601.2

Draft – Not for Implementation

447 VII. REFERENCES

- Donahue, R.E., et al., *Helper virus induced T cell lymphoma in nonhuman primates after retroviral mediated gene transfer*. J Exp Med, 1992. **176**(4):1125-1135.
- 451 2. *Fields Virology*, B.N. Fields, Knipe D.M., Howley, P.M., Editor. 2013, Wolters Kluwer
 452 Health/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins: Philadelphia.1424-1473.
- 453 3. Kahn, et al., *Spumaretroviruses: Updated taxonomy and nomenclature*. Virology 2018.
 454 516C:158-164.
- 455 4. Guidance for Industry: Supplemental Guidance on Testing for Replication Competent
 456 Retrovirus in Retroviral Vector Based Gene Therapy Products and During Follow-up of
 457 Patients in Clinical Trials Using Retroviral Vectors, November 2006.
 458 https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryIn
- 459 formation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/ucm078723.pdf
- 460 5. Gunter, K.C., A.S. Khan, and P.D. Noguchi. *The safety of retroviral vectors*. Hum Gene
 461 Ther, 1993. 4(5):643-645.
- 462 6. Purcell, D.F., et al., An array of murine leukemia virus-related elements is transmitted and
 463 expressed in a primate recipient of retroviral gene transfer. J Virol, 1996. 70(2):887-897.
- Vanin, E.F., et al., *Characterization of replication-competent retroviruses from nonhuman primates with virus-induced T-cell lymphomas and observations regarding the mechanism of oncogenesis.* J Virol, 1994. 68(7):4241-4250.
- 467 8. Cornetta, K., et al., *No retroviremia or pathology in long-term follow-up of monkeys exposed*468 *to a murine amphotropic retrovirus*. Hum Gene Ther, 1991. 2(3):215-219.
- 469 9. Kantoff, P.W., et al., *Correction of adenosine deaminase deficiency in cultured human T and*470 *B cells by retrovirus-mediated gene transfer*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U.S.A., 1986. 83(17):6563471 6567.
- 472 10. Briefing Document Testing for Replication Competent Retrovirus (RCR)/Lentivirus (RCL)
 473 in Retroviral and Lentiviral Vector Based Gene Therapy Products Revisiting Current FDA
 474 Recommendations, November 2010. https://wayback.archive-
- 475 it.org/7993/20170113010833/http://www.fda.gov/downloads/AdvisoryCommittees/Committ
 476 eesMeetingMaterials/BloodVaccinesandOtherBiologics/CellularTissueandGeneTherapiesAd
 477 visoryCommittee/UCM232592.pdf
- 478 11. Riviere, I., *Testing for Replication Competent Viruses in Clinical Gene Therapy Products.*479 *The Vector.* 2014, ASGCT.
- 480 12. Wilson, C.A., T.H. Ng, and A.E. Miller, *Evaluation of recommendations for replication-*481 *competent retrovirus testing associated with use of retroviral vectors.* Hum Gene Ther, 1997.
 482 8(7):869-874.
- 483 13. Sakuma, T., M.A. Barry, and Y. Ikeda, *Lentiviral vectors: basic to translational*. Biochem J,
 484 2012. 443(3):603-618.
- 485 14. Vannucci, L., et al., *Viral vectors: a look back and ahead on gene transfer technology*. New
 486 Microbiol, 2013. 36(1):1-22.
- 487 15. Fuller, M. and D.S. Anson, *Helper plasmids for production of HIV-1-derived vectors*. Hum
 488 Gene Ther, 2001. 12(17):2081-2093.
- 489

- 490 16. Wagner, R., et al., *Rev-independent expression of synthetic gag-pol genes of human*491 *immunodeficiency virus type 1 and simian immunodeficiency virus: implications for the*492 affett of lentivingl vectors. Hum Cone Ther. 2000. 11(17):2402-2412
- 492 safety of lentiviral vectors. Hum Gene Ther, 2000. **11**(17):2403-2413.
- 493 17. Lander, M.R. and S.K. Chattopadhyay, A Mus dunni cell line that lacks sequences closely
 494 related to endogenous murine leukemia viruses and can be infected by ectropic,
 495 1024 52(2) 605 600
- 495 *amphotropic, xenotropic, and mink cell focus-forming viruses.* J Virol, 1984. **52**(2):695-698.
- 496 18. Escarpe, P., et al., *Development of a sensitive assay for detection of replication-competent*497 *recombinant lentivirus in large-scale HIV-based vector preparations.* Mol Ther, 2003.
 498 8(2):332-341.
- 499 19. Farley, D.C., et al., *Development of a replication-competent lentivirus assay for dendritic* 500 *cell-targeting lentiviral vectors.* Mol Ther Methods Clin Dev, 2015. 2:15017.
- 20. Bassin, R.H., N. Tuttle, and P.J. Fischinger, *Rapid cell culture assay technic for murine leukaemia viruses.* Nature, 1971. 229(5286):564-566.
- S03 21. Rowe, W.P., W.E. Pugh, and J.W. Hartley, *Plaque assay techniques for murine leukemia* S04 *viruses.* Virology, 1970. 42(4):1136-1139.
- Sastry, L., et al., *Product-enhanced reverse transcriptase assay for replication-competent retrovirus and lentivirus detection*. Hum Gene Ther, 2005. 16(10):1227-1236.
- 507 23. Sastry, L., et al., Certification assays for HIV-1-based vectors: frequent passage of gag
 508 sequences without evidence of replication-competent viruses. Mol Ther, 2003. 8(5):830-839.
- 509 24. Guidance for Industry: Gene Therapy Clinical Trials Observing Subjects for Delayed
 510 Adverse Events, November 2006.
- 511https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryIn512formation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/ucm078719.pdf
- 513 25. Hacein-Bey Abina, S., et al., Outcomes following gene therapy in patients with severe
 514 Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome. JAMA, 2015. 313(15):1550-1563.
- 515 26. McGarrity, G.J., et al., *Patient monitoring and follow-up in lentiviral clinical trials*. J Gene
 516 Med, 2013. 15(2):78-82.
- 517 27. Mohanlal, R., et al., Long-Term Safety Follow-Up of Subjects Previously Treated with Non 518 Replicating Retroviral Vector-Based Gene Therapies. Mol Diagn Ther, 2016. 20(6):591-602.
- 519 28. Scholler, J., et al., *Decade-long safety and function of retroviral-modified chimeric antigen*520 *receptor T cells.* Sci Transl Med, 2012. 4(132):132-153.
- 521 29. Long, Z., et al., *Biosafety monitoring of patients receiving intracerebral injections of murine* 522 retroviral vector producer cells. Hum Gene Ther, 1998. 9(8):1165-1172.
- 30. Martineau, D., et al., *Evaluation of PCR and ELISA assays for screening clinical trial subjects for replication-competent retrovirus*. Hum Gene Ther, 1997. 8(10):1231-1241.
- 525 31. Miller, A.D., M.F. Law, and I.M. Verma, *Generation of helper-free amphotropic*526 *retroviruses that transduce a dominant-acting, methotrexate-resistant dihydrofolate*527 *reductase gene.* Mol Cell Biol, 1985. 5(3):431-437.
- 528
- 529

Draft – Not for Implementation

530 APPENDIX531

532 1-1. Derivation of Recommendation for Test Volume for RCR Detection533

Assuming the RCR are present in the production lot at a concentration (c) and that an assay will detect a single retrovirus in the sample, the probability (**p**) of detecting retrovirus in a volume (**Vt**) is given by the formula: $\mathbf{p} = 1$ -exp(-cVt), because the number of RCR in Vt follows a Poisson distribution with a parameter cVt. Solving for Vt, one gets the following equation:

- 538
- 539 540

541

542

547

548

557 558

559 560

561

 $Vt = -(1/c) \ln(1-p)$

where **In** denotes the natural logarithm.

543 Value for p

544 For the use of this formula, it is recommended that the value for **p** be set at 0.95. With 545 the recommended replicate size and number defined in Appendix 1-3 of this document, **p** 546 becomes the probability of detecting an RCR in the production lot.

Value for c

549 We recommend that the value for \mathbf{c} be set no higher than 1 RCR/dose equivalent. If the 550 concentration of RCR in the production lot is 1 RCR/dose equivalent or greater, then the 551 probability of detection is at least 0.95. If the production lot contains RCR at a 552 concentration of <1 RCR/dose equivalent, the RCR may not be detected and would be 553 administered to the patient. We also recommend that a dose equivalent be defined as the 554 maximum amount of vector expected to be administered at one time. For ex vivo 555 genetically modified cells, a dose equivalent is the amount of vector used to transduce the 556 maximum number of target cells for each production lot.

Value for Vt

With the recommended value for \mathbf{p} and \mathbf{c} , the total volume of retroviral supernatant to be tested, independent of lot size, is calculated as follows:

562	
563	Vt = - (1 / (1 RCR/dose equivalent)) ln (1 -0.95)
564	
565	Direct administration example:
566	If your product is administered at 1×10^{10} TU (transducing unit)
567	$Vt = -(1 / (1/1x10^{10} \text{ TU})) \ln (1 - 0.95) = 3x10^{10} \text{ TU}$
568	
569	Ex vivo genetic modification example:
570	If you aim to transduce up to 1×10^8 cells at an MOI (multiplicity of infection) of
571	0.5 with a titer of 5×10^7 TU/mL:
572	Dose equivalent = $(1 \times 10^8 \text{ cells}) (0.5 \text{ TU/cell}) / (1 \times 10^7 \text{ TU/mL}) = 5 \text{ mL}$
573	$Vt = -(1 / (1/5 mL)) \ln (1 - 0.95) = 15 mL$
574	

Draft – Not for Implementation

575 Proposals to use smaller volumes should be developed and reviewed in consultation with 576 CBER.

577 578

1-2. **Empirical Determination of Assav Sensitivity** 579

580 In collaboration with the ATCC, a standard gammaretroviral stock (ATCC # VR-1450) has been 581 established for use in determination of sensitivity and validation of assays used to detect the 582 presence of RCR which would be produced from VPC containing an amphotropic envelope. 583 This stock can be used to determine the relative assay sensitivity for detecting RCR. This 584 information can subsequently be used to determine the size of replicates of retroviral supernatant 585 to be tested that will ensure detection of a single retrovirus and thus, the number of replicates to 586 ensure an adequate total volume, Vt, as specified in this guidance (Appendix 1-3 of this 587 document). The virus stock is derived from a cell line which has been transfected with a 588 molecular clone encoding MoMLV with a substitution of the envelope coding region from the 589 4070A strain of amphotropic MLV (Ref. 31). Therefore, this virus stock represents a typical 590 recombinant virus that could be generated in a retroviral packaging cell line containing coding 591 sequences for a MLV envelope.

592

593 The standard virus stock and its infectious titer can be used as a positive control to empirically 594 determine the relative sensitivity of assay methods used for detection of RCR in retroviral 595 vectors. In particular, this stock will allow investigators to determine the largest test volume in 596 which a single RCR can be detected. The determination should be performed in the presence of

597 a retroviral vector supernatant typical of a production lot in order to control for inhibitory effects 598 of the retroviral vector particles on detection of RCR. Availability of this standard should allow 599 individual investigators to establish this methodology in their own laboratories, as well as allow 600 exploration of alternative methods for detection of RCR.

601

602 1-3. Formula to Determine Replicate Size and Number 603

604 Depending on the volume in which a single RCR can be detected by an individual RCR assay (as 605 determined by use of the RCR standard, Appendix 1-2 of this document), it may be necessary to 606 divide the total test volume into several replicate samples to ensure the detection of RCR in the 607 sample. The number of replicates (\mathbf{r}) , can be determined using the formula,

 $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{V}\mathbf{t} / \mathbf{V}\mathbf{s}$

- 608
- 609

610 611 where Vs is the volume in which one RCR can be consistently detected (Appendix 1-1 of this 612 document for determination of Vt).

Human Gene Therapy for Hemophilia

Draft Guidance for Industry

This guidance document is for comment purposes only.

Submit one set of either electronic or written comments on this draft guidance by the date provided in the *Federal Register* notice announcing the availability of the draft guidance. Submit electronic comments to <u>https://www.regulations.gov</u>. Submit written comments to the Dockets Management Staff (HFA-305), Food and Drug Administration, 5630 Fishers Lane, Rm. 1061, Rockville, MD 20852. You should identify all comments with the docket number listed in the notice of availability that publishes in the *Federal Register*.

Additional copies of this guidance are available from the Office of Communication, Outreach and Development (OCOD), 10903 New Hampshire Ave., Bldg. 71, Rm. 3128, Silver Spring, MD 20993-0002, or by calling 1-800-835-4709 or 240-402-8010, or email <u>ocod@fda.hhs.gov</u>, or from the Internet at

 $\label{eq:https://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/GuidanceS/default.htm.$

For questions on the content of this guidance, contact OCOD at the phone numbers or email address listed above.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Food and Drug Administration Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research July 2018

Draft – Not for Implementation

Table of Contents

I.	INTRODUCTION1
II.	BACKGROUND
III.	CONSIDERATIONS FOR PRODUCT DEVELOPMENT
IV.	CONSIDERATIONS FOR FACTOR VIII/FACTOR IX ACTIVITY MEASUREMENTS ASSESSED BY DIFFERENT CLINICAL LABORATORY ASSAYS
V.	CONSIDERATIONS FOR PRECLINICAL STUDIES 4
VI.	CONSIDERATIONS FOR CLINICAL TRIALS
	A. Efficacy Endpoints
	B. Study Design
	C. Study Population
	D. Statistical Considerations
	E. Study Monitoring
	F. Patient Experience 10
VII.	EXPEDITED PROGRAMS11
VIII.	COMMUNICATION WITH FDA 11
IX.	REFERENCES12
Draft – Not for Implementation

Human Gene Therapy for Hemophilia 1 2 3 **Draft Guidance for Industry** 4 5 6 7 *This draft guidance, when finalized, will represent the current thinking of the Food and Drug* 8 Administration (FDA or Agency) on this topic. It does not establish any rights for any person 9 and is not binding on FDA or the public. You can use an alternative approach if it satisfies the 10 requirements of the applicable statutes and regulations. To discuss an alternative approach, contact the FDA staff responsible for this guidance as listed on the title page. 11 12 13 14 I. **INTRODUCTION** 15 This guidance is intended to assist stakeholders developing human gene therapy (GT)¹ products 16 17 for the treatment of hemophilia. This guidance provides recommendations on the clinical trial 18 design and related development of coagulation factor VIII (hemophilia A) and IX (hemophilia B) 19 activity assays, including how to address discrepancies in factor VIII and factor IX activity 20 assays. This guidance also includes recommendations regarding preclinical considerations to support development of GT products for the treatment of hemophilia. Additional clinical and 21 preclinical recommendations are available through several other guidances.^{2,3} This guidance 22 23 does not provide recommendations for products for the treatment of hemophilia C (factor XI 24 deficiency) or for the treatment of any bleeding disorders other than hemophilia A and B, 25 because of the unique nature of those other bleeding disorders. 26 27 FDA's guidance documents, including this guidance, do not establish legally enforceable 28 responsibilities. Instead, guidances describe the FDA's current thinking on a topic and should be

viewed only as recommendations, unless specific regulatory or statutory requirements are cited.

¹ Human gene therapy seeks to modify or manipulate the expression of a gene or to alter the biological properties of living cells for therapeutic use. Human gene therapy products are defined as all products that mediate their effects by transcription or translation of transferred genetic material or by specifically altering host (human) genetic sequences. Some examples of gene therapy products include nucleic acids, genetically modified microorganisms (e.g., viruses, bacteria, fungi), engineered site-specific nucleases used for human genome editing (Ref. 1), and ex vivo genetically modified human cells. Gene therapy products meet the definition of "biological product" in section 351(i) of the Public Health Service (PHS) Act (42 U.S.C. 262(i)) when such products are applicable to the prevention, treatment, or cure of a disease or condition of human beings.

² Guidance for Industry: Considerations for the Design of Early-Phase Clinical Trials of Cellular and Gene Therapy Products, dated June 2015

 $[\]label{eq:https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compl$

³ Guidance for Industry: Preclinical Assessment of Investigational Cellular and Gene Therapy Products, dated November 2013

https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/C ellularandGeneTherapy/UCM376521.pdf

Draft – Not for Implementation

30 The use of the word *should* in FDA's guidances means that something is suggested or

- 31 recommended, but not required.
- 32 33

34 II. BACKGROUND

35

36 Hemophilia therapy in the United States has progressed from replacement therapies for on-37 demand treatment of bleeding to prophylaxis to reduce the frequency of bleeding. Current replacement therapies utilize plasma-derived coagulation factor or recombinant factor 38 39 concentrates. Prophylaxis has been shown to prevent joint damage in children and allows lower 40 factor usage compared to on-demand therapy, and is currently the optimal treatment for 41 hemophilia. Dosing intervals with prophylaxis are associated with peaks and troughs and aim at 42 maintaining trough levels >1% between doses. Compliance with dosing is a necessary aspect of 43 prophylaxis, and patients may experience breakthrough bleeding episodes that require treatment 44 with replacement therapies for control of bleeding. The main adverse event associated with 45 factor replacement therapy is the development of inhibitors (neutralizing antibodies) to factor 46 VIII or factor IX, which requires use of alternative therapies to overcome the effect of the 47 inhibitor. 48

GT products for the treatment of hemophilia are being developed as single-dose treatments that may provide long-term expression of the missing or abnormal coagulation factor in the patient at steady levels to reduce or eliminate the need for exogenous factor replacement. GT products in the advanced phase of clinical development may use a vector to deliver the coagulation factor gene to the liver. The coagulation factor that is expressed may be different from the wild type

- (normal) form. For example, the coagulation factor may be a truncated variant, such as B
 domain-deleted factor VIII, or a hyper-functional natural variant (such as the Padua variant of
- 56 factor IX).
- 57 58

III. CONSIDERATIONS FOR PRODUCT DEVELOPMENT

59 60

61 The general chemistry, manufacturing and control (CMC) considerations for product 62 manufacturing, testing and release of GT products for the treatment of hemophilia are the same 63 as those described for other GT products (Ref. 2). For early-phase clinical trials, a sponsor 64 should be able to evaluate the identity, purity, quality, dose, and safety of a GT product. A 65 potency assay to assess the biological activity of the final product, with relevant lot release specifications, should be established prior to the initiation of clinical trials intended to provide 66 67 substantial evidence of effectiveness for a marketing application. To support licensure of a GT 68 product, manufacturing processes and all testing methods for product release must be validated 69 (21 CFR 211.165(e)). Sponsors developing GT products for hemophilia are strongly encouraged 70 to contact the Office of Tissues and Advanced Therapies (OTAT) in the Center for Biologics 71 Evaluation and Research (CBER) early in product development to discuss product-specific 72 issues. 73

Draft – Not for Implementation

75 IV. CONSIDERATIONS FOR FACTOR VIII/FACTOR IX ACTIVITY 76 MEASUREMENTS ASSESSED BY DIFFERENT CLINICAL LABORATORY 77 ASSAYS

78

79 One stage clotting (OC) assays and chromogenic (CS) assays have been used to measure factor 80 activity; however, discrepancies in factor activity measurements between the OC and CS 81 methods have been observed (Refs. 3-9). For example, in patients with hemophilia A treated 82 with recombinant B-domain-deleted factor VIII products, CS assays indicate higher factor activity than OC assays. In contrast, for patients with hemophilia A who receive GT products 83 84 that express a B-domain-deleted factor VIII transgene, OC assays indicate higher factor activity 85 than CS assays. These contrasting results prevent us from generalizing our previous experience 86 with recombinant factor VIII products to clinical benefits related to factor VIII levels produced 87 by recipients of GT products. Similarly, for hemophilia B patients who receive GT products that 88 express the Padua variant of factor IX, discrepancies between results of the OC and CS assays 89 have been observed across products.

90

91 Factor activity assay discrepancies are not limited to differences between OC and CS assays, but 92 are also observed between OC assays using different OC reagents. These discrepancies indicate 93 structural and functional differences between the transgene proteins and normal factor proteins 94 used as an assay standard. The discrepancies preclude reliable interpretation of factor activity 95 measurements and present a challenge when factor activity levels are proposed as surrogate 96 endpoints for hemostatic efficacy. Even if factor activity is not used as a surrogate endpoint to 97 support accelerated approval, safe clinical management of patients in GT trials depends on an 98 understanding of any assay discrepancies.

- 100 To better interpret these results, we recommend that sponsors consider:
- 101 102

103

104

105 106

99

- Performing animal or in vitro preclinical studies that compare the performance of OC and CS assays. Both assays should be calibrated in International Units (IU) of factor activity and should use a reference standard analogous to the expressed transgene, if available.⁴
- Using various clinical laboratory assays in preclinical animal studies and, where feasible, assays intended for human use.
- 107 108 109

We also recommend that sponsors perform analytical studies to clarify the biochemical rootcauses for any discrepancies observed, addressing:

110 111 112

• Methodology (OC vs. CS)

⁴ The preclinical program for any investigational product should be individualized with respect to scope, complexity, and overall design, to maximize the contribution and predictive value of the resulting data for clinical safety and therapeutic activity. We encourage sponsors to explore opportunities for reducing, refining, and replacing animal use in the preclinical program. For example, it may be appropriate to use *in vitro* or *in silico* testing to complement or replace animal studies. Sponsors are encouraged to submit proposals and justify any potential alternative approaches, which we will evaluate for equivalency to animal studies.

114 115	•	Reagents (phospholipids, activators, chromogenic substrates)		
116 117	•	Conditions (incubation times, temperature)		
118 119	•	Choice of reference standards		
120 121	•	Vendors/kits/lab being used		
121 122 123	•	Correlations between factor activity and antigen levels (by immunoassay)		
124 125 126	Data fi studies	com preclinical studies should inform the selection of assays used in early-phase clinical s to:		
127 128 129	•	Measure factor activity intended to be used as a surrogate endpoint to support accelerated approval; and		
12) 130 131	•	Guide exogenous replacement therapy for the treatment of bleeding.		
132 133	During	g clinical trials, we recommend that sponsors consider:		
134 135 136	•	Performing a comparative field study with patient plasma samples using assays routinely performed in clinical laboratories to evaluate the range of discrepancies.		
137 138 139	•	Performing bridging studies on patient samples if changes to the assay(s) are initiated after a clinical trial is underway.		
140				
141 142	V.	CONSIDERATIONS FOR PRECLINICAL STUDIES		
143	A prec	linical program that is tailored to the investigational product and planned early-phase		
144	clinical trial contributes to characterization of the product's benefit/risk profile for the intended			
145	patient population. The overall objectives of a preclinical program for a G1 product include: 1)			
140	lavel dose escalation schedule and dosing regimen: 3) establishment of feasibility and			
147	reasonable safety of the proposed clinical route of administration (\mathbf{ROA}): (4) support of patient			
149	eligibility criteria: and 5) identification of notential toxicities and physiologic parameters that			
150 151	help g	uide clinical monitoring for a particular investigational product.		
152 153	Furthe guidan	r details for general considerations in preclinical studies are available in a separate ce document. ⁵ The following elements are recommended for consideration when		

⁵ Guidance for Industry: Preclinical Assessment of Investigational Cellular and Gene Therapy Products, dated November 2013

https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/C ellularandGeneTherapy/UCM376521.pdf

Draft – Not for Implementation

154 developing a preclinical program for an investigational GT product for treatment of hemophilia 155 (some of which are not necessarily exclusive to GT products for treatment of hemophilia). 156 Preclinical in vitro and in vivo proof-of-concept (POC) studies are recommended to • 157 establish feasibility and support the scientific rationale for administration of the 158 investigational GT product in a clinical trial. Data derived from preclinical POC studies 159 may guide the design of both the preclinical toxicology studies, as well as the early-phase 160 clinical trials. Several hemophilia animal models are available in the literature (Ref. 10) 161 and can be used to demonstrate biological activity of an investigational GT product and to help the evaluation of the human response. 162 163 Biodistribution studies are conducted to assess the pharmacokinetic (PK) profile of a GT 164 product. (Ref. 11) These data encompass the distribution, persistence, and clearance of 165 the vector and possibly the expressed transgene product in vivo, from the site of administration to target and non-target tissues, including biofluids (e.g., blood, lymph 166 167 node fluid). These data can determine extent of tissue transduction and transgene 168 expression, evaluate whether expression is transient or persistent, and guide the design of 169 the preclinical toxicology studies as well as the early-phase clinical trials. 170 Toxicology studies for an investigational GT product should incorporate elements of the 171 planned clinical trial (e.g., dose range, ROA, dosing schedule, evaluation endpoints, etc.), 172 to the extent feasible. Study designs should be sufficiently comprehensive to permit 173 identification, characterization, and quantification of potential local and systemic 174 toxicities, their onset (i.e., acute or delayed) and potential resolution, and the effect of 175 dose level on these findings. 176 177 To support translation of effective and safe dose levels determined in preclinical studies • 178 to clinical trials, the assay for vector titer determination of the preclinical lots should be 179 identical to the assay used for clinical lots. The assays for measuring factor activity in 180 animals administered the GT product should be consistent to the assays used in humans. 181 The factor activity assays are discussed in detail under section IV. of this document. 182 183 • As the clinical development program for an investigational GT product progresses to late-184 phase clinical trials and possible marketing approval, additional nonclinical studies may 185 need to be considered to address: 1) the potential for reproductive/developmental toxicity 186 and 2) any significant changes in the product manufacturing process or formulation 187 changes for which product comparability may be an issue. 188 189 190 VI. CONSIDERATIONS FOR CLINICAL TRIALS 191 192 The fundamental considerations for clinical development programs of GT products for 193 hemophilia are similar to those for other biologic products. Early-phase trials of GT products 194 should not only evaluate safety and feasibility, but also gauge bioactivity and preliminary 195 efficacy. Sponsors should evaluate the discrepancies between OC and CS assays early in the

196 course of clinical development, prior to considering whether to pursue accelerated approval

Draft – Not for Implementation

197 using factor activity levels as a surrogate endpoint. Later-phase trials should be designed as 198 adequate and well-controlled studies that can provide substantial evidence of effectiveness to 199 support an application for marketing. For further details of general considerations for gene 200 therapy clinical trials, please refer to relevant FDA guidance documents.^{6,7} 201 202 With respect to late-phase clinical trials that are intended to form the primary basis of an 203 effectiveness claim for hemophilia GT products, we have the following recommendations: 204 205 **Efficacy Endpoints** A. 206 207 Sponsors may consider using the following efficacy endpoints as primary endpoints in 208 clinical trials of GT products for hemophilia: 209 210 1. Traditional Approval 211 212 Annualized Bleeding Rate (ABR) as a primary endpoint to demonstrate 213 clinical benefit. 214 215 2. Accelerated Approval 216 Factor activity may be considered as a surrogate endpoint⁸ for primary • efficacy assessment under the accelerated approval pathway.⁹ (Ref. 12) 217 218

⁶ Long Term Follow-Up After Administration of Human Gene Therapy Products: Draft Guidance for Industry, July 2018, (when finalized),

 $[\]underline{https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/Compliances/C$

⁷ Guidance for Industry: Providing Clinical Evidence of Effectiveness for Human Drug and Biological Products, dated May 1998,

https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/UCM072008.pdf ⁸ For the purposes of accelerated approval, a surrogate endpoint is a marker, such as a laboratory

measurement, radiographic image, physical sign, or other measure, that is not itself a measure of clinical benefit, but is considered reasonably likely to predict clinical benefit.

⁹ Section 506(c) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (FD&C Act); 21 CFR Part 314, Subpart H – Accelerated Approval of New Drugs for Serious and Life Threatening Illnesses; 21 CFR Part 601, Subpart E.

219 220	However, to support the use of this surrogate endpoint, we recommend that you:
221 222 223	 Resolve discrepancies in factor assay results from various assay methods prior to considering a target factor activity as a surrogate endpoint for primary efficacy assessment.
224 225	• Determine a target factor activity level within the range of factor activity of normal population.
226 227 228	B. Study Design
229 230 231	While designing the clinical study, sponsors should consider the following pre-and post- administration recommendations:
232	1. Pre-administration Considerations
233	We recommend:
234 235 236	• Enrolling patients who have not required dose adjustments to their prophylactic replacement therapy for at least 12 months as this may best facilitate efficacy determinations following administration.
237 238 239 240	• Observing patients for 6 months (lead-in period) in-study to collect data for ABR rates. ABR rates based on retrospective data collection from medical records may be subject to recall bias and missing information. Collecting:
241 242 243	• ABR on an optimized prophylactic regimen to allow for within- subject (paired) comparison, increasing the statistical power relative to a design with parallel control.
244 245	 Data for supportive endpoints (e.g., utilization of exogeneous replacement therapy or trough levels of factor activity).
246 247 248	• Enrolling patients who use on-demand therapy prior to study entry in a separate cohort. Analysis of efficacy in this cohort may provide evidence to support the primary endpoint results.
249	2. Post-administration Considerations
250	We recommend:
251 252 253	• Using the same exogenous replacement therapy as in the lead-in phase to prevent (or treat) bleeding during the interval from post-GT product administration to steady state factor levels.
254 255	• Including a washout period following exogenous factor replacement therapy to measure factor activity.

256 257 258		• Including a pre-specified target factor activity level or duration from treatment that specifies the timing to discontinue exogeneous factor prophylaxis.
259 260 261		• Specifying when assessment of ABR rates and durability of response is to begin (e.g., 3 weeks after steady state levels of factor activity is reached and exogenous factor prophylaxis is discontinued).
262 263		• Collecting data for analyses of supportive endpoints as related to the pre- treatment phase.
264 265 266		• Including a plan for initiation, dosing and tapering of corticosteroids for management (treatment or prophylaxis) of immune-mediated liver dysfunction.
267 268		• Including an assessment plan to correlate factor activity and bleeding rates.
269 270	C.	Study Population
271 272 273	Spons popul	sors may consider the following recommendations when identifying the target ation:
274	•	Pre-existing antibodies to the GT product may block delivery of the coagulation
275		factor gene to its target (e.g., liver cells), limiting its therapeutic potential.
276		Therefore, sponsors may choose to exclude patients with pre-existing antibodies
277		to the GT product. In such cases, the sponsor should strongly consider
278		contemporaneous development of a companion diagnostic to detect antibodies to
279		the GT product. (Ref. 13) If an <i>in vitro</i> companion diagnostic is needed to
280		appropriately select patients for study (and later, once the GT product is approved,
281		for treatment), then submission of the marketing application for the companion
282		diagnostic and submission of the biologics license application for the G1 product
283		addition the clinical development plan should include studies to assess the effect
285		of such pre-existing antibodies on the safety and efficacy of the product.
286	•	Hemophilia affects both children and adults. Since many similar rare diseases are
287		pediatric diseases or have onset of manifestations in childhood, pediatric studies
288		are a critical part of drug development. However, treatment in pediatric patients
289		cannot proceed without addressing ethical considerations for conducting
290		investigations in vulnerable populations. Unless the risks of an investigational
291		drug are no more than a minor increase over minimal risk (21 CFR 50.53), the
292		administration of an investigational drug in children must offer a prospect of
295		direct clinical benefit to individually enrolled patients, the risk must be justified by the anticipated herefit, and the anticipated risk herefit must be at heref
∠94 205		by the anticipated benefit, and the anticipated risk-benefit profile must be at least as favorable as that presented by accepted alternative treatments (21 CEP 50 52)
295 296		Additionally adequate provisions must be made to obtain the permission of the
297		parents and the assent of the child as per 21 CFR 50 55
		parents and the abbent of the ended as per 21 CI (C 50.55.

298 299	D.	Statistical Considerations
300	To sup	port a marketing application for traditional approval, we recommend a non-
301	inferio	rity (NI) clinical trial design with ABR as the primary efficacy endpoint using a
302	within	-subject comparison design. We also recommend:
303	•	Developing a NI margin (M) for comparing ABR of the investigational GT
304		product to that of current prophylaxis therapies in the within-subject comparison
305		trial.
306		
307	•	Proposing a statistical test to rule out that the ABR of the investigational GT
308		product is more than M above the ABR of the within-subject comparator, taking
309		into account the paired nature of the ABRs before and after GT for the same
310		subject. One possible approach is to take the difference of each pair of ABRs, and
311		then test that the median of the differences is less than M using the Wilcoxon
312		Signed Rank test. We recommend that you also report a 95% confidence interval
313		(CI) on the median of the ABR difference.
314		
315	The wi	ithin-subject comparison design provides an added advantage in evaluating the
316	treatm	ent effect of the investigational product by controlling for other factors that may
317	also in	fluence the bleeding outcomes. Additional information on general statistical and
318	clinica	l considerations for these trials is described in FDA's guidance. ¹⁰
319		
320	Е.	Study Monitoring
321	-	
322	The go	bal of the follow-up is to monitor the safety and durability of response. Sponsors
323	may co	onsider the following recommendations for short-term and long-term monitoring:
324 325	1	Short Term Monitoring (first 2 years following CT product administration)
323	1.	Short-Term Monitoring (first 2 years following G1 product administration)
320		We recommend:
328		we recommend.
329		• Monitoring factor activity levels and liver function once or twice weekly
330		in the interval between administration of the GT product and until steady
331		state factor levels are reached.
332		
333		• Decreasing the frequency of monitoring of factor activity once steady state
334		levels are achieved (for instance, monthly).
335		
336		• Periodic monitoring for levels of vector-related antibodies and assessing
337		interferon- γ secretion from peripheral blood mononuclear cells by
338		ELISPOT assay (more frequent monitoring may be appropriate if
339		immune-mediated hepatic dysfunction is suspected).

¹⁰ Non-Inferiority Clinical Trials to Establish Effectiveness; Guidance for Industry, dated November 2016, <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/Guidances/UCM202140.pdf</u>

340		
341	• Monitoring for inhibitor antibodies to factor VIII or factor IX.	
342		
343	• Assessing for viral shedding for products where a viral vector is used for	
344	gene transfer. (Ref. 15)	
345		
346	2. Long-Term Monitoring (≥ 2 years following GT product administration)	
347		
348	We recommend:	
349		
350	• Monitoring for adverse events for at least 5 years after exposure to non-	
351	integrating GT products and 15 years for integrating GT products. (Ref.	
352	16)	
353		
354	• Monitoring for adverse events to include: eliciting history of and non-	
355	invasive screening for hepatic malignancies; physical examination; and	
356	laboratory testing for hepatic function.	
357		
358	• Monitoring for inhibitor antibodies to factor VIII or factor IX.	
359		
360	• Monitoring for the emergence of new clinical conditions, including new	
361	malignancies and new incidence or exacerbation of pre-existing	
362	neurologic, rheumatologic, or autoimmune disorders.	
363		
364	• Monitoring factor activity at least once every 6 months for 5 years.	
365		
366	F. Patient Experience	
367	-	
368	Patient experience data ¹¹ may provide important additional information about the clinic	al
369	benefit of a GT product. FDA encourages sponsors to collect patient experience data	
370	during product development, and to submit such data in the marketing application.	
371		
372	The treatment landscape for hemophilia is evolving. Therefore, the benefit-risk profile	of
373	the investigational product will be evaluated in the context of the treatment landscape at	
374	the time of our review of a marketing application.	
375		
376		

¹¹ As defined in section 569(c) of the FD&C Act, the term "patient experience data" includes data that are:

[•] Collected by any persons (including patients, family members and caregivers of patients, patient advocacy organizations, disease research foundations, researchers, and drug manufacturers); and

[•] Intended to provide information about patients' experiences with a disease or condition, including the impact (including physical and psychosocial impacts) of such disease or condition, or a related therapy or clinical investigation, on patients' lives; and patient preferences with respect to treatment of such disease or condition. Additional information on Patient-Focused Drug Development can be found on this website:

https://www.fda.gov/drugs/developmentapprovalprocess/ucm579400.htm

Draft – Not for Implementation

377 VII. EXPEDITED PROGRAMS

378 379 There are several programs that may be available to sponsors of GTs intended to address unmet 380 medical needs in the treatment of serious or life-threatening conditions that are intended to facilitate and expedite development and review of these therapies, including regenerative 381 382 medicine advanced therapy designation, breakthrough therapy designation, fast track 383 designation, accelerated approval, and priority review. In particular, regenerative medicine 384 advanced therapy designation and breakthrough therapy designation call for earlier attention 385 from FDA to these potentially promising therapies, offering sponsors earlier and more frequent 386 interactions with FDA on efficient trial design and overall drug development. Further information on these programs is available in separate guidance documents.^{12,13} 387 388 389 390 VIII. COMMUNICATION WITH FDA 391

392 FDA recommends communication with OTAT) early in product development, before submission

393 of an investigational new drug application (IND). There are different meeting types that can be 394 used for such discussions, depending on the stage of product development and the issues to be

395 considered. These include pre-IND meetings and, earlier in development, INitial Targeted

³⁹⁶ Engagement for Regulatory Advice on CBER producTs (INTERACT) meetings.¹⁴

397

398 Early nonbinding, regulatory advice can be obtained from OTAT through an INTERACT

399 meeting, which can be used to discuss issues such as a product's early preclinical program,

400 and/or through a pre-IND meeting prior to submission of the IND. (Ref. 17)

¹² Guidance for Industry; Expedited Programs for Serious Conditions – Drugs and Biologics, dated May 2014, https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/Guidances/UCM358301.pdf

¹³ Expedited Programs for Regenerative Medicine Therapies for Serious Conditions; Draft Guidance for Industry, dated November 2017, when finalized,

https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM585414.pdf

¹⁴ Going forward, INTERACT meetings will serve in place of pre-pre-IND meetings. For additional information about INTERACT meetings, please see

https://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/ResourcesforYou/Industry/ucm611501.htm

Draft – Not for Implementation

402 **IX. REFERENCES** 403

- Human Genome Editing: Science, Ethics, and Governance. The National Academies Press;
 2017. <u>https://www.nap.edu/read/24623/chapter/1#xvii</u>
- Chemistry, Manufacturing, and Control (CMC) Information for Human Gene Therapy
 Investigational New Drug Applications (IND); Draft Guidance for Industry, July 2018*,
 <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryIn</u>
 formation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM610795.pdf
- 410
 41. Kitchen S, et al., BAY 81-8973, a full-length recombinant factor VIII: results from an
 41. International comparative laboratory field study. Haemophilia. 2016 May; 22(3):192-199.
- 4. Kitchen S, et al., Factor VIII assay variability in postinfusion samples containing full length
 and B-domain deleted FVIII. Haemophilia. 2016 Sep; 22(5):806-812.
- 414 5. Pickering W et al. Factor VIII chromogenic assays can be used for potency labeling and post
 415 administration monitoring of N8-GP. J Thromb Haemost. 2016 Aug;14(8):1579-87.
- 416 6. Sommer JM et al. Comparative field study evaluating the activity of recombinant factor VIII
 417 Fc fusion protein in plasma samples at clinical haemostasis laboratories. Haemophilia. 2014
 418 Mar; 20(2):294-300.
- 419 7. Sommer JM et al. Comparative field study: impact of laboratory assay variability on the
 420 assessment of recombinant factor IX Fc fusion protein (rFIXFc) activity. Thromb Haemost.
 421 2014 Nov;112(5):932-40.
- 8. St. Ledger K et al. International comparative field study evaluating the assay performance of
 AFSTYLA in plasma samples at clinical hemostasis laboratories. J Thromb Haemost. 2018
 Mar;16(3):555-564.
- 425
 426
 426
 426
 427
 427
 428
 429
 429
 429
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 421
 421
 422
 421
 422
 423
 424
 424
 425
 425
 426
 427
 427
 427
 427
 428
 429
 429
 429
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 421
 421
 421
 422
 423
 424
 424
 425
 425
 426
 427
 427
 427
 428
 428
 429
 429
 429
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
 420
- 428 10. Lozier JN et al. Animal models of hemophilia and related bleeding disorders. Semin
 429 Hematol. 2013 Apr;50(2): 175-84.
- 430 11. Long Term Follow-Up After Administration of Human Gene Therapy Products: Draft
 431 Guidance for Industry, July 2018,*
- 432https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryIn433formation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM610797.pdf
- 434 12. Expedited Programs for Serious Conditions Drugs and Biologics: Guidance for Industry,
 435 May 2014, <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/Guidances/UCM358301.pdf</u>
- 436
 437
 438
 438
 439
 439
 439
 430
 430
 431
 432
 432
 433
 434
 435
 436
 437
 438
 438
 439
 439
 430
 430
 431
 432
 432
 433
 434
 435
 436
 437
 438
 438
 439
 439
 430
 431
 432
 432
 433
 434
 434
 435
 435
 436
 437
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 439
 439
 430
 431
 432
 432
 433
 434
 434
 435
 436
 437
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 439
 439
 431
 432
 432
 433
 434
 434
 435
 436
 437
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
 438
- 438http://www.fda.gov/downloads/MedicalDevices/DeviceRegulationandGuidance/GuidanceDo439cuments/UCM262327.pdf
- 440 14. Design and Analysis of Shedding Studies for Virus or Bacteria-Based GT and Oncolytic
 441 Products: Guidance for Industry, August 2015,
 442 https://www.fda.gov/downloads/biologicsbloodvaccines/guidancecomplianceregulatoryinfor
- 443 <u>mation/guidances/cellularandgenetherapy/ucm404087.pdf</u>
- 444 15. Guidance for Industry: Gene Therapy Clinical Trials Observing Subjects for Delayed
 445 Adverse Events, November 2006,

- 446 <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryIn</u>
 447 <u>formation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/ucm078719.pdf</u>
- 448 16. Expedited Programs for Regenerative Medicine Therapies for Serious Conditions; Draft
 449 Guidance for Industry, dated November 2017,*
- 450https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryIn451formation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM585414.pdf
- 452 17. Formal Meetings Between the FDA and Sponsors or Applicants: Guidance for Industry,
- 453 May 2009, <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidances/ucm079744.pdf</u>
- 454
- 455
- 456 457
- 458 * When finalized, this guidance will represent FDA's current thinking on this topic.

Human Gene Therapy for Rare Diseases

Draft Guidance for Industry

This guidance document is for comment purposes only.

Submit one set of either electronic or written comments on this draft guidance by the date provided in the *Federal Register* notice announcing the availability of the draft guidance. Submit electronic comments to <u>https://www.regulations.gov</u>. Submit written comments to the Dockets Management (HFA-305), Food and Drug Administration, 5630 Fishers Lane, Rm. 1061, Rockville, MD 20852. You should identify all comments with the docket number listed in the notice of availability that publishes in the *Federal Register*.

Additional copies of this guidance are available from the Office of Communication, Outreach and Development (OCOD), 10903 New Hampshire Ave., Bldg. 71, Rm. 3128, Silver Spring, MD 20993-0002, or by calling 1-800-835-4709 or 240-402-8010, or email <u>ocod@fda.hhs.gov</u>, or from the Internet at https://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guid

https://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/GuidanceS/default.htm.

For questions on the content of this guidance, contact OCOD at the phone numbers or email address listed above.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Food and Drug Administration Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research July 2018

Draft – Not for Implementation

Table of Contents

I.	INTRODUCTION 1	
II.	BACKGROUND 2	
III.	CONSIDERATIONS FOR PRODUCT DEVELOPMENT 2	
IV.	CONSIDERATIONS FOR PRECLINICAL STUDIES	
V.	CONSIDERATIONS FOR CLINICAL TRIALS	
	A. Study Population	
	B. Study Design	
	C. Dose Selection	,
	D. Safety Considerations	,
	E. Efficacy Endpoints	
	F. Patient Experience 10	
VI.	EXPEDITED PROGRAMS 10	
VII.	COMMUNICATION WITH FDA 11	
VIII.	REFERENCES12	

Draft – Not for Implementation

Human Gene Therapy for Rare Diseases 1 2 3 **Draft Guidance for Industry** 4 5 6 7 *This draft guidance, when finalized, will represent the current thinking of the Food and Drug* 8 Administration (FDA or Agency) on this topic. It does not establish any rights for any person 9 and is not binding on FDA or the public. You can use an alternative approach if it satisfies the 10 requirements of the applicable statutes and regulations. To discuss an alternative approach, contact the FDA staff responsible for this guidance as listed on the title page. 11 12 13 14 I. **INTRODUCTION** 15 16 This guidance provides recommendations to stakeholders developing a human gene therapy (GT) 17 product¹ intended to treat a rare disease² in adult and/or pediatric patients regarding the manufacturing, preclinical, and clinical trial design issues for all phases of the clinical 18 19 development program. Such information is intended to assist sponsors in designing clinical 20 development programs for such products, where there may be limited study population size and 21 potential feasibility and safety issues, as well as issues relating to the interpretability of 22 bioactivity/efficacy outcomes that may be unique to rare diseases or to the nature of the GT 23 product itself. 24 25 FDA's guidance documents, including this guidance, do not establish legally enforceable 26 responsibilities. Instead, guidances describe the FDA's current thinking on a topic and should be 27 viewed only as recommendations, unless specific regulatory or statutory requirements are cited. 28 The use of the word *should* in FDA's guidances means that something is suggested or 29 recommended, but not required.

¹ Human gene therapy seeks to modify or manipulate the expression of a gene or to alter the biological properties of living cells for therapeutic use. Human gene therapy products are defined as all products that mediate their effects by transcription or translation of transferred genetic material or by specifically altering host (human) genetic sequences. Some examples of gene therapy products include nucleic acids, genetically modified microorganisms (e.g., viruses, bacteria, fungi), engineered site-specific nucleases used for human genome editing (Ref. 1), and ex vivo genetically modified human cells. Gene therapy products meet the definition of "biological product" in section 351(i) of the Public Health Service (PHS) Act (42 U.S.C. 262(i)) when such products are applicable to the prevention, treatment, or cure of a disease or condition of human beings.

 $^{^{2}}$ A rare disease is defined by the Orphan Drug Act of 1983 as a disorder or condition that affects fewer than 200,000 persons in the United States. Public Law 97-414, 96 Stat. 2049 (1983). Amended by Public Law 98-551 (1984) to add a numeric prevalence threshold to the definition of rare diseases.

Draft – Not for Implementation

31 II. BACKGROUND

32 33 The National Institutes of Health (NIH) reports that nearly 7,000 rare diseases affect more than 34 25 million Americans. Approximately 80% of rare diseases are caused by a single-gene defect, and about half of all rare diseases affect children. Since most rare diseases have no approved 35 36 therapies, there is a significant unmet need for effective treatments, and many rare diseases are 37 serious or life-threatening conditions. As a general matter, developing safe and effective 38 products to treat rare diseases can be challenging. For example, it might be more difficult to find 39 and recruit patients with rare diseases into clinical trials. Additionally, many rare diseases 40 exhibit a number of variations or sub-types. Consequently, patients may have highly diverse clinical manifestations and rates of disease progression with unpredictable clinical courses. 41 42 These challenges are also present for the development of GT products. However, despite these 43 challenges, GT-related research and development in the area of rare diseases continues to grow 44 at a rapid rate.

45

4647 III. CONSIDERATIONS FOR PRODUCT DEVELOPMENT

48

49 The general chemistry, manufacturing and control (CMC) considerations for product

50 manufacturing, testing and release of GT products for rare diseases are the same as those

51 described for other GT products (Ref. 2). However, some aspects of the development programs

52 for rare diseases, such as limited population size and fewer lots manufactured, may make it

53 challenging to follow traditional product development strategies. In traditional product

54 development, critical quality attributes (CQA) of the product are evaluated during each phase of 55 clinical development, and characterization data from many product lots are correlated to clinical

56 outcomes. In addition, GT products may have CQA with higher variability than drugs or well-

57 characterized biologics, which can add to CQA uncertainty. Smaller study populations may

result in the need for fewer manufacturing runs, which can make it difficult to establish the

59 critical process parameters (CPP) necessary for ensuring CQA. However, demonstrating process

60 control to ensure a consistent product with predefined CQA for potency, identity and purity is

61 required to demonstrate compliance with licensure and regulatory requirements.³

62

63 These factors make it even more critical that a sponsor of a GT product for a rare disease

64 establish a well-controlled manufacturing process along with suitable analytical assays to assess

65 product CQA as early in development as possible, optimally before administration of the GT

66 product to the first subject. Importantly, as the phase 1 study may provide evidence of safety and

67 effectiveness, characterization of product CQA and manufacturing CPP should be implemented

68 during early clinical development, and innovative strategies such as the production of multiple

69 small lots versus a single large product lot may be considered. Sponsors developing GT products

for rare diseases are strongly encouraged to contact the Office of Tissues and Advanced

³ Section 351(a)(2)(C)(i) of the PHS Act (42 U.S.C. 262(a)(2)(C)(i)); 21 CFR 601.2; 21 CFR 601.20; 21 CFR Part 610, Subpart B.

Draft – Not for Implementation

Therapies (OTAT) in the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research (CBER) prior to
 investigational new drug application (IND) submission to discuss their product-specific
 considerations, which may include:

- Product-related variations, including those contributed by intrinsic differences among subjects' cells, may have a more pronounced effect on the interpretability of smaller rare disease studies. This is equally true of impurities such as empty and wild type viral particles that may be present in viral vectors. Establishment of assays for characterization of product-related variants and impurities will be important for program success.
- 83 Potency assays are critical to assess product functional activity, consistency, stability, and • 84 to provide evidence of comparability after changes to the manufacturing process. 85 Therefore, we strongly encourage the evaluation of multiple product characteristics that 86 could be used to establish a potency test during initial clinical studies. As these assays 87 are critical to product development, we recommend that a potency test that measures a 88 relevant biological activity be qualified for suitability (i.e., accurate, precise, sensitive, 89 specific) prior to conducting trials intended to provide substantial evidence of 90 effectiveness for a marketing application, and validated for licensure (Ref. 3).
- 92 Limited availability of starting materials (e.g., autologous cells) and reference materials • 93 to design suitable assays to measure CQA, as well as limited process understanding, can 94 hamper manufacturing process development, comparability studies, and process 95 validation (Ref. 4). Sponsors are encouraged to consider, where possible, implementing 96 manufacturing changes needed for commercial-scale production and demonstrating 97 product comparability prior to the initiation of clinical trials intended to provide 98 substantial evidence of effectiveness for a marketing application. Importantly, if product 99 comparability cannot be demonstrated, additional clinical studies may be needed.
- 100 101

82

91

102 IV. CONSIDERATIONS FOR PRECLINICAL STUDIES

103 104 A preclinical program that is tailored to the investigational product and planned early-phase 105 clinical trial contributes to characterization of the product's benefit/risk profile for the intended 106 patient population. The overall objectives of a preclinical program for a GT product include: 1) 107 identification of a biologically active dose range; 2) recommendations for an initial clinical dose 108 level, dose-escalation schedule, and dosing regimen; 3) establishment of feasibility and 109 reasonable safety of the proposed clinical route of administration (ROA); 4) support of patient 110 eligibility criteria; and, 5) identification of potential toxicities and physiologic parameters that 111 help guide clinical monitoring for a particular investigational product. In addition, to justify 112 conducting a first-in-human clinical trial in pediatric subjects that is associated with more than a 113 minor increase over minimal risk, the preclinical program should include studies designed to 114

Draft – Not for Implementation

115 demonstrate a prospect of direct benefit (21 CFR 50.53) of the investigational GT product (refer 116 to section V.A. of this document for further discussion). This objective is important when 117 clinical evidence is not available from adult subjects with the same disease. 118 119 Further details for general considerations in preclinical studies are available in a separate 120 guidance document (Ref. 5). Although not specific to rare diseases, the following elements are 121 recommended in the development of a preclinical program for an investigational GT product: 122 123 Preclinical in vitro and in vivo proof-of-concept (POC) studies are recommended to • 124 establish feasibility and support the scientific rationale for administration of the 125 investigational GT product in a clinical trial. Data derived from preclinical POC studies 126 can guide the design of both the preclinical toxicology studies, as well as the early-phase 127 clinical trials. The animal species and/or models selected should demonstrate a 128 biological response to the investigational GT product that is similar to the expected 129 response in humans. 130 131 Biodistribution studies should be conducted to assess the pharmacokinetic (PK) profile of • 132 a GT product (Ref. 6). These data encompass the distribution profile of the vector from 133 the site of administration to target and non-target tissues, including biofluids (e.g., blood, 134 lymph node fluid, cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)) as applicable. These data can determine 135 extent of tissue transduction and transgene expression, evaluate whether expression is 136 transient or persistent, and guide the design of the preclinical toxicology studies as well 137 as the early-phase clinical trials. 138 139 Toxicology studies for an investigational GT product should incorporate the elements of • 140 the planned clinical trial (e.g., dose range, ROA, dosing schedule, evaluation endpoints, 141 etc.) to the extent feasible. Study designs should be sufficiently comprehensive to permit 142 identification, characterization, and quantification of potential local and systemic 143 toxicities, their onset (i.e., acute or delayed) and potential mitigation and resolution, and 144 the effect of dose level on these findings. In some cases, additional assessments may also 145 be important to consider, such as safety and feasibility of the proposed GT delivery 146 system and procedure, and immune response directed against vector and expressed 147 transgene product. 148 The conduct of additional nonclinical studies⁴ may be needed to address such factors as: 149 • 150 1) the potential for developmental and reproductive toxicity; and 2) significant changes in 151 the manufacturing process or formulation that may impact comparability between the 152 product administered in clinical trials and the product intended for licensure.

⁴ The preclinical program for any investigational product should be individualized with respect to scope, complexity, and overall design, to maximize the contribution and predictive value of the resulting data for clinical safety and therapeutic activity. We encourage sponsors to explore opportunities for reducing, refining, and replacing animal use in the preclinical program. For example, it may be appropriate to use *in vitro* or *in silico* testing to complement or replace animal studies. Sponsors are encouraged to submit proposals and justify any potential alternative approaches, which we will evaluate for equivalency to animal studies.

Draft – Not for Implementation

153 V. CONSIDERATIONS FOR CLINICAL TRIALS

Many rare disorders are serious, with no approved treatments and represent substantial unmet medical needs for patients. Because of phenotypic heterogeneity, disease manifestations are likely to vary in onset and severity. Information obtained from a natural history study can potentially provide critical information to guide every stage of drug development from drug discovery to determining effectiveness and safety of the drug in treating a disease (Ref. 7). However, there may be insufficient information on the natural history of the disease to inform the selection of a historical comparator or to inform clinical endpoint selection in future clinical trials.

164 In a majority of these disorders, clinical manifestations appear early in life, and there are ethical 165 and regulatory considerations regarding enrollment of children in clinical trials. These 166 considerations should factor into the design of both early- and late-phase clinical trials. Further

details of general considerations for GT clinical trials are available in a separate guidance

- 168 document (Ref. 8).

The following important elements are recommended for consideration during clinical
development of investigational GT products intended for treatment of rare diseases (although
they are not exclusively applicable to GT products for rare diseases).

A. Study Population

Selection of the study population should consider existing preclinical or clinical data to determine the potential risks and benefits for the study subjects. In addition, sponsors should consider whether the proposed study population is likely to provide informative safety and/or efficacy data (Ref. 8). The following points should be considered with respect to trials of GT products for rare diseases:

- If the disease is caused by a genetic defect, the sponsor should perform genetic test(s) for the specific defect(s) of interest in all clinical trial subjects. This information is important to ensure correct diagnosis of the disorder of interest. In addition, since many of these disorders can involve either deletions or functional mutations at any of several loci within a specific gene, safety and effectiveness may be linked to genotype in unpredictable ways. Given this, early understanding of such associations may help in planning future clinical trials. Therefore, if there are no readily available, reliable means of obtaining the needed genetic diagnosis, a companion diagnostic may be needed and therefore should be considered early in development.
- Pre-existing antibody to the GT product may limit its therapeutic potential.
 Sponsors may choose to exclude patients with pre-existing antibodies to the GT product. In such cases, the sponsor should strongly consider contemporaneous development of a companion diagnostic to detect antibodies to the GT product. If an *in vitro* companion diagnostic is needed to appropriately select patients for

Draft – Not for Implementation

198		study (and later, once the GT product is approved, for treatment), then submission
199		of the marketing application for the companion diagnostic and submission of the
200		biologics license application for the GT product should be coordinated to support
201		contemporaneous marketing authorizations.
202		
203	•	Severity of disease should be considered in designing clinical GT trials (Ref. 8),
204		as well as the anticipated risk and potential benefits to subjects. Subjects with
205		severe or advanced disease might experience confounding adverse events that are
206		related to the underlying disease rather than to the GT product itself; however,
207		they may be more willing to accept the risk of an investigational GT product in
208		the context of the anticipated clinical benefit.
209		-
210	•	Since most rare diseases are pediatric diseases or have onset of manifestations in
211		childhood, pediatric studies are a critical part of drug development. However,
212		treatment in pediatric patients cannot proceed without addressing ethical
213		considerations for conducting investigations in vulnerable populations. Unless
214		the risks of an investigational drug are no more than a minor increase over
215		minimal risk (21 CFR 50.53), the administration of an investigational drug in
216		children must offer a prospect of direct clinical benefit to individually enrolled
217		patients, the risk must be justified by the anticipated benefit, and the anticipated
218		risk-benefit profile must be at least as favorable as that presented by accepted
219		alternative treatments (21 CFR 50.52). Additionally, adequate provisions must be
220		made to obtain the permission of the parents and the assent of the child as per 21
221		CFR 50.55.
222		
223	٠	The risks of most GT products include the possibility of unintended effects that
224		may be permanent, along with adverse effects due to invasive procedures that
225		may be necessary for product administration. Because of these risks, it is
226		generally not acceptable to enroll normal, healthy volunteers into GT studies. A
227		well-written informed consent document is also essential.
228		
229	B.	Study Design
230		• •
231	For rat	re diseases, there may be a limited number of patients who may qualify for
232	enrollr	nent into a clinical study. As a result, it is often not feasible to enroll unique
233	subjec	ts for all studies conducted under different phases of the clinical development
234	progra	m. Limitation in the number of prospective subjects warrants the collection of as
235	much	pertinent data (e.g., adverse events, efficacy outcomes, biomarkers) as possible
236	from e	very subject, starting from the first-in-human study. All such data may be valuable

238	to inform the design of subsequent studies (e.g., selection of study populations and
239	endpoints). Sponsors developing GT products for rare diseases should consider the
240	following:
241	
242	• The randomized, concurrent-controlled trial is generally considered the ideal
243	standard for establishing effectiveness and providing treatment-related safety
244	data. Randomization in early stages of development is strongly encouraged when
245	feasible.
246	
247	• Sponsors should consider designing their first-in-human study to be an adequate
248	and well-controlled investigation that has the potential, depending on the study
249	results, to provide evidence of effectiveness to support a marketing application
250	results, to provide evidence of effectiveness to support a marketing appreation.
251	• To promote interpretability of data for studies that enroll subjects with different
251	disease stages or severities sponsors should consider stratified randomization
252	hased on disease stage/severity
253	based on disease stage/seventy.
255	• For some GT indications (e.g., a genetic skin disease) the use of an intra subject
255	control design may be useful. Comparisons of local therapeutic effects can be
250	facilitated by the elimination of variability among subjects in inter-subject
258	designs
250	designs.
257	• A single arm trial using historical controls, compating including an initial
200	• A single-ann that using instonear controls, sometimes including an initial observation period, may be considered if there are feasibility issues with
201	conducting a randomized controlled trial
262	conducting a randomized, controlled that.
263	• If use of a type of single arm trial design with a historical control is necessary
265	then knowledge of the natural history of disease is critical. Natural history data
265	may provide the basis of a historical control but only if the control and treatment
260	nonulations are adequately matched in terms of demographics, concurrent
267	treatment disease state and other relevant factors. In circumstances where
260	randomized concurrent controlled trials cannot be conducted and the natural
20)	history is well characterized sponsors may consider the clinical performance of
270	available therapies (if there are any) when setting the performance goal or criteria
271	against which the product effect will be tested
273	ugunist which the product criect will be tested.
273	• A small sample size together with high inter-subject variability in clinical course
274	diminishes a study's power to detect treatment-related effects. Therefore
276	alternative trial designs and statistical techniques that maximize data from a small
270	and notentially heterogeneous group of subjects should be considered. Ideally
278	utilizing as an endpoint a treatment outcome that virtually never occurs in the
279	natural course of the disease would greatly facilitate the design and cogeney of
280	email trials
280	sman ulais.
<u>~01</u>	

282 283 284	• Ade app	equate measures to minimize bias should be undertaken. The preferred proach to minimize bias is to use a study design that includes blinding.
284	C De	as Salaation
285	C. D0:	se Selecuoli
280		as colorison should be informed by all quailable courses of aliginal information
287	• Dos	se selection should be informed by all available sources of clinical information
200	(8.8	g., publications, experience with similar products, experience in related patient
209	por	julations).
290	• Los	variaging non-human data obtained in animal models of disease and in vitro
291	 Lev date 	a may be in some cases, the only way to estimate a starting human dose that is
292	uat	a may be, in some cases, the only way to estimate a starting numan dose that is
293	froi	m predictive models based on current understanding of in vitro enzyme
205	kin	in predictive models based on current understanding of in vitro enzyme
296	alle	ometric scaling
297	and	Shoure seaming.
298	• For	r early-phase studies, clinical development of GT products should include
299	eva	aluation of two or more dose levels to help identify the potentially therapeutic
300	dos	se(s). Ideally, placebo controls should be added to each dose cohort.
301		
302	• Sor	me GT products may have an extended duration of activity, so that repeated
303	dos	sing may not be an acceptable risk until there is a preliminary understanding of
304	the	product's toxicity and duration of activity.
305		
306	Efforts sho	buld be made early in the GT product development program to identify and
307	validate bio	omarkers and to leverage all available information from published
308	investigatio	ons for the disease of interest (or related diseases). Some biomarkers or
309	endpoints a	are very closely linked to the underlying pathophysiology of the disease (e.g., a
310	missing me	etabolite in a critical biosynthetic pathway). In this case, total or substantial
311	restoration	of the biosynthetic metabolic pathway may generally be expected to confer
312	clinical ber	nefit. Changes in such biomarkers could be used during drug development for
313	dose-select	tion, or even as an early demonstration of drug activity.
314		
315	D. Saf	fety Considerations
316		
317	• Cli	nical trials should include a monitoring plan that is adequate to protect the
318	safe	ety of clinical trial subjects. The elements and procedures of the monitoring
319	pla	n should be based upon what is known about the GT product, including
320	pre	clinical toxicology, as well as CMC information, and, if available, previous
321	hur	man experience with the proposed product or related products (Ref. 8).
322	_	
323	• Inn	ate and adaptive immune responses directed against one or more components
324	of (G1 products (e.g., against the vector and/or transgene) may impact product
325	safe	ety and efficacy. Early development of appropriate assays to measure product-
326		

Draft – Not for Implementation

 directed immune responses may be critical to program success. neutralizing and non-neutralizing immune responses that are directed product should be monitored throughout the clinical trial (Ref. 9) 330 	Development of rected against the <i>D</i>).
• When there is limited previous human experience with a specific administration to several subjects concurrently may expose those the several subjects concurrently may expose the several subjects conc	c GT product, e subjects to
333 unacceptable risk. Most first-in-numan trials of G1 products sh	ould stagger
administration to consecutively enrolled subjects, for at least an	initial group of
335 subjects, followed by staggering between dose cohorts. This app	proach limits the
336 number of subjects who might be exposed to an unanticipated sa	afety risk (Ref. 8).
337 The optimal dosing interval between consecutively enrolled sub	jects and dose
cohorts should be discussed with OTAT prior to conduct of the	trial.
339	
• Because of the unique nature of the mechanism of action involv	ing genetic
341 manipulation, a potential exists for serious long-term effects that	t may not be
342 apparent during development or even at the time of an initial lice	ensure. The long-
343 term safety of GT products is currently unknown. The appropria	ate duration of
344 long term follow-up depends on the results of preclinical studies	s with this
345 product, knowledge of the disease process, and other scientific i	nformation (Ref.
346 6).	
347	
• Early-phase GT clinical trial protocols should generally include	study stopping
349 rules, which are criteria for halting the study based on the observ	ved incidence of
350 particular adverse events. The objective of study stopping rules	is to limit subject
351 exposure to risk in the event that safety concerns arise. Well-de	signed stopping
352 rules may allow sponsors to assess and address risks identified a	as the trial
353 proceeds, and to amend the protocol to mitigate such risks or to	assure that human
354 subjects are not exposed to unreasonable and significant risk of	illness or injury.
355	
• The potential for viral shedding should be addressed early in pro-	oduct development
357 (Ref. 10).	1
358	
359 E. Efficacy Endpoints	
360	
361 Demonstration of clinical benefit of a GT product follows the same prin	ciples as for any
362 other product. However, in some cases there may be unique characteris	stics of GT
363 products (e.g., a protein that is expressed by a GT product may have dif	forant his satistity
364 than standard enzyme replacement therapy) that warrant additional cons	
365 pre-approval and post-marketing. Prior to commencing clinical trials of	siderations both
	siderations both f GT products for
366 rare diseases, it is critically important to have a discussion with FDA ab	siderations both f GT products for yout the primary
366 rare diseases, it is critically important to have a discussion with FDA ab 367 efficacy endpoint(s). For many rare diseases, well-established disease-	siderations both f GT products for out the primary

endpoints are not available (Ref. 11). Endpoint selection for a clinical trial of a GT product for a rare disease should consider the following:

Draft – Not for Implementation

371		•	Sponsors should utilize an understanding the pathophysiology and natural history
372			of a disease as fully as possible at the outset of product development. Full
373			understanding of mechanism of product action is not required for product
374			approval; however, understanding of pathophysiology is important in planning
375			clinical trials, including selection of endpoints.
376			
377		•	For sponsors that are considering seeking accelerated approval of a GT product
378			for a rare disease pursuant to section 506(c) of the Federal Food. Drug. and
379			Cosmetic Act (FD&C Act) based on a surrogate endpoint, it will be particularly
380			important to understand the pathophysiology and natural history of the disease in
381			order to help identify potential surrogate endpoints that are reasonably likely to
382			predict clinical benefit.
383			1
384		•	Sponsors should identify specific aspects of the disease that are meaningful to the
385			patient and might also be affected by the GT product's activity (Ref. 12).
386			
387		•	Considerable information can be gained by collecting clinical measurements
388			repeatedly over time. Such longitudinal profile allows the assessments of effect,
389			largely based on within-patient changes, that otherwise could not be studied.
390			
391		F.	Patient Experience
392			
393		Patier	nt experience data ⁵ may provide important additional information about the clinical
394		benef	it of a GT product. FDA encourages sponsors to collect patient experience data
395		during	g product development, and to submit such data in the marketing application.
396			
397			
398	VI.	EXPI	EDITED PROGRAMS
399			
400	There	are sev	reral programs that may be available to sponsors of GTs intended to address unmet
401	medic	al need	s in the treatment of serious or life-threatening conditions that are intended to
402	facilit	ate and	expedite development and review of these therapies, including regenerative
403	medic	cine adv	anced therapy designation, breakthrough therapy designation, fast track

404 designation, accelerated approval, and priority review. In particular, regenerative medicine

405 advanced therapy designation and breakthrough therapy designation call for earlier attention

⁵ As defined in section 569(c) of the FD&C Act, the term "patient experience data" includes data that are:

[•] Collected by any persons (including patients, family members and caregivers of patients, patient advocacy organizations, disease research foundations, researchers, and drug manufacturers); and

[•] Intended to provide information about patients' experiences with a disease or condition, including the impact (including physical and psychosocial impacts) of such disease or condition, or a related therapy or clinical investigation, on patients' lives; and patient preferences with respect to treatment of such disease or condition.

Additional information on Patient-Focused Drug Development can be found on this website: <u>https://www.fda.gov/drugs/developmentapprovalprocess/ucm579400.htm</u>

Draft – Not for Implementation

406 from FDA to these potentially promising therapies, offering sponsors earlier and more frequent 407 interactions with FDA on efficient trial design and overall drug development. Further 408 information on these programs is available in separate guidance documents^{6,7}. 409 410 411 VII. **COMMUNICATION WITH FDA** 412 413 FDA recommends communication with OTAT early in product development, before submission of an IND. There are different meeting types that can be used for such discussions, depending 414 415 on the stage of product development and the issues to be considered. These include pre-IND 416 meetings and, earlier in development, INitial Targeted Engagement for Regulatory Advice on CBER producTs (INTERACT) meetings.⁸ Early nonbinding, regulatory advice can be obtained 417 418 from OTAT through an INTERACT meeting, which can be used to discuss issues such as a

- 419 product's early preclinical program, and/or through a pre-IND meeting prior to submission of the
- 420 IND (Ref. 13).
- 421

https://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/ResourcesforYou/Industry/ucm611501.htm.

⁶ Guidance for Industry: Expedited Programs for Serious Conditions – Drugs and Biologics, dated May 2014, <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/Guidances/UCM358301.pdf</u>

⁷ Expedited Programs for Regenerative Medicine Therapies for Serious Conditions, Draft Guidance for Industry, dated November 2017,

 $[\]label{eq:https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/Compliances/Compliances$

⁸ Going forward, INTERACT meetings will serve in place of pre-pre-IND meetings. For additional information about INTERACT meetings, please see

Draft – Not for Implementation

422 VIII. REFERENCES

- Human Genome Editing: Science, Ethics, and Governance. The National Academies Press;
 2017. <u>https://www.nap.edu/read/24623/chapter/1</u>
- 2. Chemistry, Manufacturing, and Control (CMC) Information for Human Gene Therapy
 Investigational New Drug Applications (INDs); Draft Guidance for Industry, July 2018*,
 <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryIn</u>
 formation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM610795.pdf
- 429 3. Guidance for Industry: Potency Tests for Cellular and Gene Therapy Products, January 2011,
 430 <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryIn</u>
 431 formation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM243392.pdf
- 432 4. Guidance for Industry: Process Validation: General Principles and Practices, January 2011, https://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidances/ucm070336.pdf
- 434 5. Preclinical Assessment of Investigational Cellular and Gene Therapy Products; Guidance for435 Industry, November 2013,
- 436https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryIn437formation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM376521.pdf
- 438
 438
 6. Long Term Follow-Up After Administration of Human Gene Therapy Products; Draft
 439
 440
 440
 440
 440
 441
 441
 441
 442
 442
 443
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
 444
- 440https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryIn441formation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM610797.pdf
- 442 7. Rare Diseases: Common Issues in Drug Development; Draft Guidance for Industry, August 2015*,
- 444 <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInfo</u>
- 8. Considerations for the Design of Early-Phase Clinical Trials of Cellular and Gene Therapy
 Products; Guidance for Industry, June 2015,
- 448 <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryIn</u>
 449 <u>formation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM564952.pdf</u>
- 450 9. Guidance for Industry: Immunogenicity Assessment for Therapeutic Protein Products,
 451 August 2014, <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidances/ucm338856.pdf</u>
- 452 10. Design and Analysis of Shedding Studies for Virus or Bacteria-Based Gene Therapy and
 453 Oncolytic Products; Guidance for Industry, August 2015,
 454 https://www.fda.gov/downloads/biologicsbloodyaccines/guidancecomplianceregulatoryinfor
- 454https://www.fda.gov/downloads/biologicsbloodvaccines/guidancecomplianceregulatoryinfor455mation/guidances/cellularandgenetherapy/ucm404087.pdf
- 456 11. Guidance for Industry: Providing Clinical Evidence of Effectiveness for Human Drug and
 457 Biologic Products, May 1998,
- 458 <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInfo</u>
- 460 12. Clinical Outcome Assessment Qualification Program
 461 <u>https://www.fda.gov/drugs/developmentapprovalprocess/drugdevelopmenttoolsqualificationp</u>
 462 rogram/ucm284077.htm
- 463 13. Guidance for Industry: Formal Meetings Between the FDA and Sponsors or Applicants,
 464 May 2009, <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidances/ucm079744.pdf</u>
 465
- 466 *When finalized, this guidance will represent FDA's current thinking on this topic.

Human Gene Therapy for Retinal Disorders

Draft Guidance for Industry

This guidance document is for comment purposes only.

Submit one set of either electronic or written comments on this draft guidance by the date provided in the *Federal Register* notice announcing the availability of the draft guidance. Submit electronic comments to <u>https://www.regulations.gov</u>. Submit written comments to the Dockets Management Staff (HFA-305), Food and Drug Administration, 5630 Fishers Lane, Rm. 1061, Rockville, MD 20852. You should identify all comments with the docket number listed in the notice of availability that publishes in the *Federal Register*.

Additional copies of this guidance are available from the Office of Communication, Outreach and Development (OCOD), 10903 New Hampshire Ave., Bldg. 71, Rm. 3128, Silver Spring, MD 20993-0002, or by calling 1-800-835-4709 or 240-402-8010, or email <u>ocod@fda.hhs.gov</u>, or from the Internet at

 $\label{eq:https://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/GuidanceS/default.htm.$

For questions on the content of this guidance, contact OCOD at the phone numbers or email address listed above.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Food and Drug Administration Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research July 2018

Draft – Not for Implementation

Table of Contents

I.	INT	INTRODUCTION1		
II.	CON	SIDERATIONS FOR PRODUCT DEVELOPMENT	. 2	
III.	CON	SIDERATIONS FOR PRECLINICAL STUDIES	. 2	
IV.	CON	SIDERATIONS FOR CLINICAL TRIALS	. 4	
	А.	Natural History Studies	. 5	
	В.	Study Design	. 5	
	C.	Study Population	6	
	D.	Study Use	.7	
	E.	Safety Considerations	.7	
	F.	Study Endpoints	8	
	G.	Follow-Up Duration	9	
	H.	Patient Experience	9	
V.	EXP	EDITED PROGRAMS1	10	
VI.	COMMUNICATION WITH FDA 10			
VII.	REF	ERENCES 1	11	

Draft – Not for Implementation

1	Human Gene Therapy for Retinal Disorders	
3		
4 5	Draft Guidance for Industry	
6		
7 8 9 10 11	This draft guidance, when finalized, will represent the current thinking of the Food and Drug Administration (FDA or Agency) on this topic. It does not establish any rights for any person and is not binding on FDA or the public. You can use an alternative approach if it satisfies the requirements of the applicable statutes and regulations. To discuss an alternative approach, contact the FDA staff responsible for this guidance as listed on the title page.	
12		
13 14 15	I. INTRODUCTION	
16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23	This guidance provides recommendations to stakeholders developing human gene therapy (GT) products ¹ for retinal disorders affecting adult and pediatric patients. These disorders vary in etiology, prevalence, diagnosis, and management, and include genetic as well as age-related diseases. These disorders manifest with central or peripheral visual impairment and often with progressive visual loss. This guidance focuses on issues specific to GT products for retinal disorders and provides recommendations related to product development, preclinical testing, and clinical trial design for such GT products.	
23 24 25 26 27 28 29	FDA's guidance documents, including this guidance, do not establish legally enforceable responsibilities. Instead, guidances describe FDA's current thinking on a topic and should be viewed only as recommendations, unless specific regulatory or statutory requirements are cited. The use of the word <i>should</i> in FDA's guidances means that something is suggested or recommended, but not required.	

30

¹ Human gene therapy seeks to modify or manipulate the expression of a gene or to alter the biological properties of living cells for therapeutic use. Human gene therapy products are defined as all products that mediate their effects by transcription or translation of transferred genetic material or by specifically altering host (human) genetic sequences. Some examples of gene therapy products include nucleic acids, genetically modified microorganisms (e.g., viruses, bacteria, fungi), engineered site-specific nucleases used for human genome editing, (Ref.1) and ex vivo genetically modified human cells. Gene therapy products meet the definition of "biological product" in section 351(i) of the Public Health Service (PHS) Act (42 U.S.C. 262(i)) when such products are applicable to the prevention, treatment, or cure of a disease or condition of human beings.

Draft – Not for Implementation

32 II. CONSIDERATIONS FOR PRODUCT DEVELOPMENT

33

34 There are multiple GT products being studied in clinical trials in the United States for retinal

disorders. GT products are commonly delivered by intravitreal or subretinal injections through a
 medical delivery system. In some cases, the GT products are encapsulated in a device to be

- 37 implanted intravitreally.
- 38

39 The general chemistry, manufacturing and control (CMC) considerations for product

40 manufacturing, testing and release of GT products for retinal disorders are the same as those

41 described for other GT products (Ref. 2). For early-phase clinical trials, a sponsor should be

42 able to evaluate the identity, purity, quality, dose, and safety of a GT product. A potency assay 43 to assess the biological activity of the final product, with relevant lot release specifications.

to assess the biological activity of the final product, with relevant lot release specifications,
should be established prior to the initiation of clinical trials intended to provide substantial

45 evidence of effectiveness for a marketing application. To support licensure of a GT product,

46 manufacturing processes and all testing methods for product release must be validated

47 (21 CFR 211.165(e)). Sponsors developing GT products for retinal disorders are strongly

48 encouraged to contact the Office of Tissues and Advanced Therapies in the Center for Biologics

Evaluation and Research (CBER) early in product development to discuss product-specific
 issues.

51

55 56

57

58 59

60

61 62

63 64 65

Sponsors of GT products for retinal disorders should take into account general CMC
 considerations for all GT products (Ref. 2), as well as CMC considerations specific to the
 products intended for treatment of retinal disorders, including:

- Consideration of the final product formulation and concentration to meet the expected dose and volume requirement;
- The endotoxin limit for intraocular delivery is not more than (NMT) 2.0 Endotoxin Unit (EU)/dose/eye or NMT 0.5 EU/mL (USP <771>);
 - GT vector-based final products should be tested for particulate matter, and the test method and release criteria should follow USP <789>;
 - Product testing and release should include testing of the final product configuration;
 - Compatibility of the GT product and the delivery system should be evaluated.
- 67 68 69

66

- III. CONSIDERATIONS FOR PRECLINICAL STUDIES
- 70 71

A preclinical program that is tailored to the investigational product and the planned early-phase

clinical trials helps characterize the product's benefit/risk profile for the intended patient

74 population. Overall objectives of the preclinical program for a GT product include: 1)

- 75 identification of a biologically active dose level range; 2) recommendations for an initial clinical
- dose level, dose-escalation schedule, and dosing regimen; 3) establishment of feasibility and

Draft – Not for Implementation

reasonable safety of the proposed clinical route of administration (ROA); 4) support of patient

- reasonable safety of the proposed ennieth fouce of administration (reor), fy support of patient
 eligibility criteria; and, 5) identification of potential toxicities and physiologic parameters that
- 79 help guide clinical monitoring.
- 80

81 Further details for general considerations in preclinical studies of these investigational GT

- 82 products are available in a separate guidance document.² The following elements are
- recommended for consideration when developing a preclinical program for an investigational GT
- 84 product intended for treatment of retinal disorders (some of which are not necessarily exclusive
- 85 to GT products for retinal disorders):
- 86
- 87 Preclinical in vitro and in vivo proof-of-concept (POC) studies are recommended to • 88 establish feasibility and support the scientific rationale for administration of the 89 investigational GT product in a clinical trial. Data derived from preclinical POC studies 90 may guide the design of both the preclinical toxicology studies, as well as the early-phase 91 clinical trials. The animal species and/or models selected should demonstrate a biological 92 response to the investigational GT product that is similar to the expected response in 93 humans. 94
- Biodistribution studies should be conducted to assess the pharmacokinetic profile of a GT product (Ref. 3). These data encompass the distribution, persistence, and clearance of the vector and possibly the expressed transgene product in vivo, from the site of administration to target ocular and non-ocular tissues, intraocular fluids, and blood.
 These data can determine extent of tissue transduction and transgene expression, evaluate whether expression is transient or persistent, and guide the design of the preclinical toxicology studies as well as the early-phase clinical trials.
- 102

103 Toxicology studies for an investigational GT product should incorporate elements of the • 104 planned clinical trial (e.g., dose range, ROA, dosing schedule, and evaluation endpoints, 105 etc.), to the extent feasible. Study designs should be sufficiently comprehensive to permit 106 identification, characterization, and quantification of potential local and systemic 107 toxicities, their onset (i.e., acute or delayed) and potential resolution, and the effect of 108 dose level on these findings. For any abnormal ophthalmic findings or lesions, sponsors 109 should determine the frequency, severity, potential cause, and clinical significance. 110 Inflammatory or immune responses should be further characterized to assess potential 111 attribution to the vector or transgene.

112 113

114

• Animal models of retinal disorders are frequently developed in rat or mouse strains (e.g., transgenic or knockout models) and these models are often utilized to generate POC

² Preclinical Assessment of Investigational Cellular and Gene Therapy Products; Guidance for Industry, dated November 2013,

https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/C ellularandGeneTherapy/UCM376521.pdf

Draft – Not for Implementation

115data.3 However, due to differences in ocular size and anatomy in rodents as compared to116the human eye, animals with more 'human-like' eyes, such as rabbits, pigs, dogs, or117nonhuman primates, may also provide applicable safety information. Inclusion of the118larger animals also facilitates relevant experience with the surgical procedures and119delivery systems intended for clinical use.

120

Differences between the immune responses of animals and humans are important considerations when interpreting preclinical data. Retinal disorders typically are bilateral and chronic. However, a second administration of a GT product to either the contralateral eye or to the same eye may not be feasible due to an immunologic reaction against the vector and/or the transgene product. Therefore, clinical data, rather than preclinical data, may provide the most relevant safety information for repeat product administration.

 As the clinical development program for an investigational GT product advances to latephase clinical trials and possible marketing approval, additional preclinical studies may be indicated. Further testing may be necessary to address factors such as any significant changes in the manufacturing process or formulation, which may affect comparability of the late-phase product to product administered in early-phase clinical trials.

134 135

128

136 IV. CONSIDERATIONS FOR CLINICAL TRIALS

The fundamental considerations for clinical development programs of GT products for retinal
disorders are similar to those for other biological products. Early-phase trials of GT products
should not only evaluate safety and feasibility, but also gauge bioactivity and preliminary
efficacy. Later-phase trials should be designed as adequate and well-controlled studies that can
provide substantial evidence of effectiveness to support an application for marketing. For further
details of general considerations for gene therapy clinical trials, please refer to relevant FDA
guidance documents.^{4,5}

145

146 The following important elements are recommended for consideration during development of 147 clinical programs of investigational GT products intended for treatment of retinal disorders.

³ The preclinical program for any investigational product should be individualized with respect to scope, complexity, and overall design, to maximize the contribution and predictive value of the resulting data for clinical safety and therapeutic activity. We encourage sponsors to explore opportunities for reducing, refining, and replacing animal use in the preclinical program. For example, it may be appropriate to use *in vitro* or *in silico* testing to complement or replace animal studies. Sponsors are encouraged to submit proposals and justify any potential alternative approaches, which we will evaluate for equivalency to animal studies.

⁴ Considerations for the Design of Early-Phase Clinical Trials of Cellular and Gene Therapy Products; Guidance for Industry, dated June 2015,

 $[\]underline{https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM564952.pdf$

⁵ Guidance for Industry: Providing Clinical Evidence of Effectiveness for Human Drug and Biological Products, dated May 1998,

https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/UCM072008.pdf

Draft – Not for Implementation

149 A. Natural History Studies

148

150 151

152

153

154

155

156

157

158

159

161

175

181

A thorough understanding of the natural history of a disease is an important element in all clinical development programs. Many degenerative retinal disorders are rare, and their natural history is often poorly characterized. Early in product development, sponsors should evaluate the depth and quality of existing natural history data. When such information is insufficient to guide clinical development, FDA recommends that a sponsor perform a careful natural history study to facilitate the product development program, although FDA does not require these studies. Early interactions between FDA and sponsors are welcome regarding the design of natural history studies (Ref. 4).

160 B. Study Design

162 To facilitate interpretation of clinical data, inclusion of a randomized, concurrent parallel 163 control group is recommended for clinical trials whenever possible. Administration of 164 the vehicle alone may serve as a control. In general, while intravitreal injection of the 165 vehicle alone is often feasible as a placebo control, it may not be considered ethically 166 acceptable unless the physical properties of an injection in a closed space have a potential 167 therapeutic benefit. When ethically acceptable, such a control is especially helpful early 168 in clinical development, to evaluate bioactivity of the investigational GT product and 169 possibly to provide initial evidence of its clinical efficacy. However, FDA acknowledges 170 the risks associated with intravitreal and subretinal injection procedures and vehicles; 171 without any prospect of direct benefit, these risks may not be acceptable under certain 172 circumstances, such as for pediatric patients (21 CFR Part 50, Subpart D). Other 173 possibilities to vehicle controls include alternative dosing regimens, alternative dose 174 levels, and existing products approved for the indication being sought.

Measurement of certain efficacy and safety endpoints such as visual acuity is subjective,
and results can be influenced by effort on the part of the patient, leading to a potential
source of bias in the clinical trial. For trials intended to form the primary basis of an
efficacy claim to support a marketing application, concurrent parallel group(s) should be
used as a control (placebo or active) to decrease potential bias.

182 To further reduce potential bias, sponsors should include adequately-designed masking 183 procedures. Differences between the procedure used for product delivery and a sham 184 procedure may enable patients to distinguish the eye which received the product from 185 that which received the sham treatment. FDA recommends at least two treatment arms, 186 utilizing different doses but the same product administration procedures, to minimize 187 patients' ability to identify their treatment arm, in addition to a sham control group. In 188 addition to facilitating masking, the second treatment arm has value as a dose-ranging 189 control.

Draft – Not for Implementation

Although use of the contralateral eye to which the GT product is not administered as a
control may potentially be considered, it is generally not recommended due to the
following:

- For most indications in which GT products are likely to be used, the treated eye and contralateral eye are often at different stages of disease at the time of trial entry. In addition, disease progression in the two eyes is not necessarily similar over the relatively short duration of the trial.
 - When a patient is exposed to different procedures in the two eyes (e.g., one eye receives a GT product and the other eye receives sham procedure), it frequently leads to unmasking, which can confound the interpretation of the study results, particularly for endpoints where patient effort can make a difference, such as visual function measures.
 - C. Study Population

For clinical trials of GT products providing gene replacement, the correct genetic diagnosis is essential for identifying potential participants. Thus, confirmation of the genetic mutation prior to enrollment is recommended as an important element of the clinical trial. If there are no readily available, reliable means of obtaining the needed genetic diagnostic testing, a companion diagnostic may be needed and therefore should be strongly considered early in development. If an *in vitro* companion diagnostic is needed to appropriately select patients for study (and later, once the GT product is approved, for treatment), then submission of the marketing application for the companion diagnostic and submission of the biologics license application for the GT product should be coordinated to support contemporaneous marketing authorizations.

Patients with severe visual impairment, or a disease that is likely to progress to severe visual impairment, may be more willing to accept the potential or unknown risks of a novel GT product, and those risks may be more readily justified in this population. However, in some cases – for example, a GT product designed to restore function to remaining viable retinal cells – severely affected patients may not benefit from administration of the GT product nor would use in these patients provide information about the effectiveness of the product. In general, first-in-human GT trials should enroll patients with severities of visual impairment that offer a favorable benefit-risk profile. If preliminary safety data supports further clinical development, sponsors may consider a broader patient population in future trials.

Many retinal disorders affect both children and adults. For diseases that affect both
adults and children, trials in adult patients should be conducted prior to trials in pediatric
patients, whenever feasible. Since most rare diseases are pediatric diseases or have onset
of manifestations in childhood, pediatric studies are a critical part of drug development.
However, treatment in pediatric patients cannot proceed without addressing ethical
considerations for conducting investigations in vulnerable populations. Unless the risks

Draft – Not for Implementation

of an investigational drug are no more than a minor increase over minimal risk (21 CFR 50.53), the administration of an investigational drug in children must offer a prospect of direct clinical benefit to individually enrolled patients, the risk must be justified by the anticipated benefit, and the anticipated risk-benefit profile must be at least as favorable as that presented by accepted alternative treatments (21 CFR 50.52). Additionally, adequate provisions must be made to obtain the permission of the parents and the assent of the child as per 21 CFR 50.55.

D. Study Use

243 244

245 246

247

248

249

250

251

252

253 254

255

256

257

258

259

260

261

262

263 264 265

266

267 268

269

270

271 272

273

For early-phase trials, dose-ranging study designs are recommended. Comparing a range of doses can identify potential therapeutic doses for a wider group of patients. The choice of an initial dose and dose regimen should be supported by preclinical studies and/or available clinical information. Such data should indicate that the initial dose is not only reasonably safe, but also has therapeutic potential, particularly when the administration procedure carries substantial risks.

Most retinal indications for which GT products are studied involve bilateral disease; consideration, therefore, should be given during product development to the planned administration of the GT product in both eyes. Because of safety concerns related to the product, administration procedure, and any ancillary medications, administration to each eye for an individual patient should be performed sequentially, rather than simultaneously. While often the eye with more advanced disease receives the GT product initially, a rationale should be developed for deciding which eye will receive the GT product first. The time interval between administration in each eye should be carefully planned for each patient based on preclinical data and available human experience. For products intended for both eyes, the overall development plan prior to approval should include clinical trials in which both eyes receive the GT product.

To ensure consistency across study sites, sponsors should include in the study protocol a detailed description of the product delivery procedure and devices used for delivery.

A single administration of a GT product in each eye may not always be sufficient for a variety of reasons. In such cases, careful studies, especially trials in humans, are recommended to explore the feasibility of repeat administration in the same eye.

E. Safety Considerations

Intraocular administration (e.g., intravitreal or subretinal injection) may be the most
efficient method to deliver GT products intended for treatment of retinal disorders. Risks
of such procedures include intraocular infection, elevated intraocular pressure, media
opacities, and retinal damage. Therefore, the procedure should be performed by
individuals experienced in the method of planned delivery.
Draft – Not for Implementation

Local or systemic immune responses to GT products may pose important safety risks. For certain GT products, such as those using various viral vectors to introduce therapeutic transgene(s) in vivo, immune reactions also may decrease transduction efficiency and thereby diminish the treatment effect. Biomicroscopy and optical coherence tomography are recommended to detect inflammatory reactions within the globe. To monitor systemic immune reactions, immunoassays should be performed to measure cellular and humoral immune responses to the vector and the transgene-encoded protein.

To minimize immune responses, immunosuppressants such as corticosteroids may be considered before and after product administration. Immunosuppressant drugs may cause increased intraocular pressure, cataracts, and other adverse events. Patients should be closely monitored and treated as necessary to minimize the risk of developing glaucoma, vision loss, and other complications.

F. Study Endpoints

288

289

290

291

292

293 294

295 296

297

298

299

300

301

302

303

304

305

306

307

308

309 310

311

312 313

314

315

316

317

318

319

Early-phase clinical trials typically focus on safety. However, for trials of GT products, early assessment of potential clinical benefit is also important, particularly for rare diseases with a limited number of patients available to participate in clinical development. To guide further clinical development, FDA encourages sponsors to explore a wide spectrum of potential clinical endpoints and other clinical effects in earlyphase trials. For example, sponsors may include endpoints based on retinal imaging (optical coherence tomography, retinal photography, fluorescein angiography), visual acuity (low and high luminance), visual fields, color vision, contrast sensitivity, other measures of visual function (i.e., how well the eye and visual system function), and functional vision (i.e., how well the patient performs vision-related activities of daily living). For later-phase trials intended to provide substantial evidence of effectiveness to support a marketing application, primary efficacy endpoints should reflect clinical benefit, such as improvement in function or symptoms.

Examples of established efficacy endpoints that can be used to evaluate clinical benefit of GT products intended for treatment of retinal disorders include:

- Best corrected distance visual acuity, measured with the Early Treatment of Diabetic Retinopathy Study (ETDRS) chart or other visual acuity charts with an equal number of letters per line and equivalent spacing between lines. A halving (or doubling) of the visual angle represented by a gain (or loss), respectively, of at least 15 letters on the ETDRS chart from baseline is considered clinically meaningful.
- Rate of photoreceptor loss, determined by measures such as optical coherence
 tomography or autofluorescence photography. The comparison should be made
 between the baseline and at least two subsequent area images, with intervals of 6
 months or more between images. The best curve fit analyses demonstrating

Draft – Not for Implementation

324		reduction in the rate of photoreceptor loss exceeding measurement uncertainty are
325		considered clinically meaningful.
326		
327	FDA	encourages sponsors to develop and propose novel endpoints to measure clinically
328	mean	ingful effects in patients with retinal disorders. This can be especially pertinent to
329	some	rare retinal disorders for which the established efficacy endpoints may not be
330	appro	priate to assess clinically meaningful effect of an investigational product. Sponsors
331	are w	elcome to engage FDA early in this process, and FDA is committed to working with
332	spons	ors to develop acceptable endpoints.
333		
334	•	For example, a novel primary efficacy endpoint measuring mobility under
335		different levels of illumination was utilized to support marketing approval for
336		voretigene neparvovec-rzyl (a recombinant adeno-associated vector (AAV)
337		carrying the gene for human retinal pigment epithelium-specific 65 kDa protein).
338		During the clinical trials, the sponsor worked with FDA to develop this clinically
339		meaningful primary efficacy endpoint.
340		
341	G.	Follow-Up Duration
342		
343	The length of follow-up to provide additional information regarding the safety and	
344	efficacy of the GT product depends on many aspects of a GT product, including vector	
345	persistence, genome integration, and transgene activity, and the goal of the follow-up	
346	(e.g., safety vs. durability of clinical effect). In addition to monitoring for safety,	
347	long-term follow-up is recommended to evaluate durability of the clinical effect. More	
348	detailed discussion of long-term follow-up is provided in a separate FDA guidance	
349	docur	nent (Ref. 3).
350		
351	H.	Patient Experience
352		
353	Patient experience data ⁶ may provide important additional information about the clinical	
354	benefit of a GT product. FDA encourages sponsors to collect patient experience data	
355	during	g product development, and to submit such data in the marketing application.
356		

³⁵⁶ 357

⁶ As defined in the section 569(c) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (FD&C Act), the term "patient experience data" includes data that are:

[•] Collected by any persons (including patients, family members and caregivers of patients, patient advocacy organizations, disease research foundations, researchers, and drug manufacturers); and

[•] Intended to provide information about patients' experiences with a disease or condition, including the impact (including physical and psychosocial impacts) of such disease or condition, or a related therapy or clinical investigation, on patients' lives; and patient preferences with respect to treatment of such disease or condition.

Additional information on Patient-Focused Drug Development can be found on this website: <u>https://www.fda.gov/drugs/developmentapprovalprocess/ucm579400.htm</u>

Draft – Not for Implementation

358 V. EXPEDITED PROGRAMS

359 360 There are several programs that may be available to sponsors of GTs intended to address unmet 361 medical needs in the treatment of serious or life-threatening conditions that are intended to 362 facilitate and expedite development and review of these therapies, including regenerative 363 medicine advanced therapy designation, breakthrough therapy designation, fast track 364 designation, accelerated approval, and priority review. In particular, regenerative medicine 365 advanced therapy designation and breakthrough therapy designation call for earlier attention 366 from FDA to these potentially promising therapies, offering sponsors earlier and more frequent 367 interactions with FDA on efficient trial design and overall drug development. Further 368 information on these programs is available in separate guidance documents.^{7,8} 369

370

371 VI. COMMUNICATION WITH FDA

372

FDA recommends communication with OTAT early in product development, before submission of an investigational new drug application (IND).) There are different meeting types that can be used for such discussions, depending on the stage of product development and the issues to be considered. These include pre-IND meetings and, earlier in development, INitial Targeted Engagement for Regulatory Advice on CBER producTs (INTERACT) meetings.⁹ Early nonbinding, regulatory advice can be obtained from OTAT through an INTERACT meeting, which can be used to discuss issues such as a product's early preclinical program, and/or through

a pre-IND meeting prior to submission of the IND (Ref. 5).

381

https://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/ResourcesforYou/Industry/ucm611501.htm.

⁷ Guidance for Industry: Expedited Programs for Serious Conditions – Drugs and Biologics, dated May 2014, <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/Guidances/UCM358301.pdf</u>

⁸ Expedited Programs for Regenerative Medicine Therapies for Serious Conditions: Draft Guidance for Industry, dated November 2017, (when finalized),

https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM585414.pdf

⁹ Going forward, INTERACT meetings will serve in place of pre-pre-IND meetings. For additional information about INTERACT meetings, please see

Draft – Not for Implementation

382 VII. REFERENCES

- Human Genome Editing: Science, Ethics, and Governance. National Academies Press; 2017.
 https://www.nap.edu/read/24623/chapter/1#xvii
- Chemistry, Manufacturing, and Control (CMC) Information for Human Gene Therapy
 Investigational New Drug Applications (IND); Draft Guidance for Industry, July 2018*,
 <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryIn</u>
 formation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM610795.pdf
- Long Term Follow-Up After Administration of Human Gene Therapy Products; Draft Guidance for Industry, July 2018*,
- 392 <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryIn</u>
 393 <u>formation/Guidances/CellularandGeneTherapy/UCM610797.pdf</u>
- 394
 4. Rare Diseases: Common Issues in Drug Development: Draft Guidance for Industry, August 2015*,
- 396 <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidanc</u>
 397 <u>es/UCM458485.pdf</u>
- 398 5. Guidance for Industry: Formal Meetings Between the FDA and Sponsors or Applicants, May
 399 2009, <u>https://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidances/ucm079744.pdf</u>
- 400

383

- 401 402
- 403 * When finalized, this guidance will represent FDA's current thinking on this topic.
- 404
- 405
- 406